ONE TO ONE DISCIPLESHIP

Table of Contents

Introduction to Discipleship........................................................................................................................................... 3

Part One: Knowing God

1. Who Is Jesus ............................................................................................................................................................. 7
2. How Can I Be Sure That I Am Going To Heaven? ............................................................................................... 14
3. What Is God Like? ..................................................................................................................................................... 21

Part Two: The Disciplines of a Christian

4. How Should I Study The Bible? ............................................................................................................................. 32
5. How Should I Pray .................................................................................................................................................... 40
6. How Can I Be A Witness To Others? ..................................................................................................................... 48

Part Three: The Christian’s Relationship to the Church

1. What Is My Relationship To Others In The Church? ............................................................................................. 54
2. Who Is The Holy Spirit, And What Spiritual Gifts Does He Give? ..................................................................... 65
3. What Do I Need To Know About Spiritual Warfare ............................................................................................ 76
4. What Do I Need To Know About Stewardship? ..................................................................................................... 87
5. Why Is Obedience Important? What Should I Know About Baptism And The Lord’s Supper? ......................... 96

Part Four: Reproducing Disciples

6. What Do I Need To Know About The Great Commission? ..................................................................................... 112

This manual may be reproduced for non-sale purposes only.
Introduction to One-To-One Discipleship

There are many methods and tools God uses to help Christians grow in their spiritual life. One of these tools is one-to-one discipleship. Before beginning the process of discipleship with another person, it is important to first understand the Biblical principle of discipleship. The word “disciple” comes from a Greek word which means "apprentice" as in “one who learns by doing.” One-to-one discipleship, then, is when one Christian takes another Christian under his/her care in order to help that person become an “apprentice” of Jesus Christ and to experience spiritual growth by learning and doing.

We can see the importance of discipleship when we study the New Testament -- the word “disciple” occurs 269 times! Discipleship is important because it helps the person being discipled to become established in the basics of the Christian faith (see Ephesians 4:14-16). It allows them to ask questions about their faith, and to be challenged and encouraged in areas in which they are weak. It helps them to identify their God-given spiritual gifts, and equips them to share the gospel with unbelievers. In addition, a very important aspect of discipleship is that it trains and equips a Christian to disciple other believers.

Discipleship is the primary method of teaching Jesus used in his three years of ministry here on earth. Jesus’ main focus was not on large groups of people, but rather He focused on just 12 men who were known as His “disciples.” These disciples spent a great deal of time with Jesus. The time they spent together was not in a classroom and not even in a synagogue. Rather, Jesus taught His disciples on the streets of the city and in their daily activities as they traveled about together. They learned the skills of prayer, evangelism, living in obedience, spiritual warfare, showing compassion and forgiveness, and many other things. How did they learn these skills? They learned by listening, watching, learning, and finally imitating the actions, attitudes, and teachings of Jesus, the master teacher.

Over a three year period, Jesus not only taught His disciples to understand the truths of the Christian faith, He also trained and equipped them to pass these truths on to others. Then just before Jesus left this world, He commanded them to “Go and MAKE DISCIPLES of all nations . . “(Matthew 28:19). Jesus wanted his disciples to reproduce this principle of discipleship in other people. He wanted them to disciple other believers in the same way that He had discipled them.

We can also see the principle of discipleship practiced by others such as the Apostle Paul. Paul took two younger men, Timothy and Titus, under his care. He used the principle of discipleship as he trained and equipped them to understand and pass on the Christian faith. Paul then instructed Timothy to continue the process of discipleship, telling him:

“And the things that you have heard from me among many witnesses, commit these to faithful men who will be able to teach others also” (2 Timothy 2:2 New King James Version).

From this verse we can see how the apostle Paul “reproduced” himself through discipleship:
As we see from the illustration above, it should be the desire of every Christian to be a “reproducing Christian,” that is, one who promotes faith in Jesus in others by his testimony and example. Discipleship is more than just teaching someone some facts about the Bible. Discipleship means encouraging, supporting, and praying daily for the person being discipled. Discipleship means spending time with the other person—sharing meals, discussing problems, serving others, and going with them to witness to unbelievers in the neighborhood. Discipleship means nothing less than walking together side-by-side and growing together in the Lord. As the apostle Paul said in 1 Thessalonians 2:8, “We loved you so much that we were delighted to share with you not only the gospel of God but our lives as well, because you had become so dear to us.”

Just as Jesus and Paul did not use a classroom in making disciples, likewise many of the discipleship lessons in this manual will occur in the streets and fields of your towns and not necessarily in your church. For example, you will not merely learn about evangelism but you will actually go with the person who is discipling you to witness to an unbeliever in your neighborhood. You will not merely learn about servanthood but will actually serve someone in your local church. Christians learn best not by simply hearing but by doing (see James 1:22-23). As John MacArthur states:

“Being discipled toward godliness isn’t accomplished in a thirteen-week class; it is accomplished by spending time with a godly individual—walking with him, feeling his heartbeat, hearing him speak, and seeing him pray.”

In closing, as we emphasize discipleship throughout this manual, let us always remind ourselves that growth comes from the inside out. Too often in Christian circles we make the mistake of getting people to “do” the right things rather than helping them change on the inside. It is our desire that this process of discipleship will cause inner change that will result in lasting outward change.

May God bless you as you take this step in following Christ’s command to “Go and make disciples.”

Mti hukunjwa wakati ungali mchanga
On redresse l'arbe quand il est encore jeune
A stick is straightened while still young
**Guidelines for the Discipler**

1. Select a person to disciple only after careful prayer and evaluation.

2. Before you begin to disciple another person, it is important to discuss with him or her why you are meeting and the commitment involved. Read the “Introduction to Discipleship” together and make certain the process of discipleship is understood. Also ask, “What are your needs and expectations regarding this discipleship process?”

3. Before your weekly meetings with the person you are discipling, always take the time to review each lesson and pray about what will be discussed. Keep in mind the spiritual maturity of the person you are discipling as you plan your discussion.

4. Be certain to do only **ONE** lesson at a time. Make sure the person you are discipling has a complete and proper understanding of each lesson before going on to the next lesson (even if you have to spend 2-3 weeks on a difficult lesson). This is **very important**, as the person you are discipling will eventually be teaching someone else. Make sure that they are not simply memorizing material but that they are understanding and **applying** it. Seek to discover the most meaningful thing in each lesson for the person you are discipling, and help him or her to make at least one practical application.

5. Tell the person you are discipling that anything personal that is discussed will be kept completely confidential. Share prayer requests with the person you are discipling, and pray daily for him/her.

6. Be sensitive to the needs of the person you are discipling. There will be times when you need to set aside the lesson in order to pray about some personal needs or to answer some very important questions that the student is struggling with. **Remember, a person is more important than a program!**

7. Review, review, review. This is the key to learning. (The apostle Peter used this principle in 2 Peter 1:11-15.) Review material from previous chapters (including memory verses) and review progress on goals set previously.

8. Encourage the person you are discipling to complete the homework for each lesson (the homework will take about one hour each week to complete). Hold that person accountable. Emphasize the importance of this discipline. Be sure to give much praise and encouragement to the person you are discipling when he or she faithfully completes the work and when you see growth in his/her life.

9. If the person you are discipling regularly fails to complete the homework or fails to keep 3 or 4 appointments with you (even after much encouragement from you), it may be best to suggest to that person that perhaps the discipleship should be postponed until he or she is ready and able to be seriously committed to the discipleship process. This will then make you available to disciple someone who is ready to be faithful to following through on the commitment required.

10. Evaluation of the person you are discipling is very important. After the fourth lesson, spend some time asking specific questions to discover if they are growing. Also ask them about any frustrations or disappointments they may be experiencing (many people are afraid to express disappointments or frustrations unless they are specifically asked). It will also be very helpful if you ask the person you are discipling to evaluate you after the two of you complete the manual so that you can become a more effective discipler.
Assignment for Chapter 1

Who is Jesus?

NOTE: In order to get to know each other a little better, take a moment to share what your dreams and goals are in each of these three areas:

1. Character goals
   Examples: I want to be more disciplined. I want to be more patient.

2. Spiritual goals
   Examples: I want to read the entire Bible. I want to learn to share my faith.

3. Personal goals
   Examples: I want to pay off my mortgage. I want to be able to help support others.

Do not go on to chapter 2 until you have completed and checked each of the following assignments:

_____ Study and complete the material for chapter 1.

_____ Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 1 with the person who is discipling you.

_____ Memorize John 3:16-17, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.

Note: To help assist you, the end of this manual has a list of memory verses that you can photocopy, cut and insert into your wallet and review from time to time.

☐ John 3:16-17. For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life. 17 For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the world might be saved through him.
Part One: Knowing God

Chapter 1

Who Is Jesus?

Memorize John 3:16-17 — “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the world might be saved through him.”

Who Is Jesus?
In order to truly understand the Christian faith, we must first clearly understand who Jesus Christ is. Many people have an incorrect understanding of Jesus. The Muslims say Jesus is merely a prophet. Jehovah Witnesses say he is not God. Mormons say Jesus became a god through good works. Others say that He was just a good teacher. This is why it is so essential to understand what does the Bible actually say about Jesus?

A. He Is Fully God
The first thing we must know about Jesus is that He is fully God. He is not just partly God, rather He is 100% God. He IS God.

Read John 1:1 — In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God - and 1:14 - And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we have seen his glory, glory as of the only Son from the Father, full of grace and truth. What do these say about who Jesus is and how long He has existed?

Describe in your own words what you think Jesus meant when He made the following claims about himself:

- John 10: 30-33 — I and the Father are one.” 31 The Jews picked up stones again to stone him. 32 Jesus answered them, “I have shown you many good works from the Father; for which of them are you going to stone me?” 33 The Jews answered him, “It is not for a good work that we are going to stone you but for blasphemy, because you, being a man, make yourself God.”

- John 18: 4-9 — Philip said to him, “Lord, show us the Father, and it is enough for us.” Jesus said to him, “Have I been with you so long, and you still do not know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, ‘Show us the Father’?

Describe in your own words what others thought of Jesus in the verses listed:

- Thomas, as read in John 20: 25-28 — So the other disciples told him, “We have seen the Lord.” But he said to them, “Unless I see in his hands the mark of the nails, and place my finger into the mark of the nails, and place my hand into his side, I will never believe.” 26 Eight days later, his disciples were inside again, and Thomas was with them. Although the doors were locked, Jesus came and stood among them and said, “Peace be with you.” 27 Then he said to Thomas, “Put your finger here, and see my hands; and put out your hand, and place it in my side. Do not disbelieve, but believe.” 28 Thomas answered him, “My Lord and my God!”

- Jesus’ enemies, as read in John 5:18 — This was why the Jews were seeking all the more to kill him, because not only was he breaking the Sabbath, but he was even calling God his own Father, making himself equal with God.
Jesus had the ability to do things that only God can do. Read the passages below and then describe what Jesus was able to do that only God can do:

- Mark 2:1-12 — And when he returned to Capernaum after some days, it was reported that he was at home. 2 And many were gathered together, so that there was no more room, not even at the door. And he was preaching the word to them. 3 And they came, bringing to him a paralytic carried by four men. 4 And when they could not get near him because of the crowd, they removed the roof above him, and when they had made an opening, they let down the bed on which the paralytic lay. 5 And when Jesus saw their faith, he said to the paralytic, “Son, your sins are forgiven.” 6 Now some of the scribes were sitting there, questioning in their hearts, 7 “Why does this man speak like that? He is blaspheming! Who can forgive sins but God alone?” And immediately Jesus, perceiving in his spirit that they thus questioned within themselves, said to them, “Why do you question these things in your hearts? 9 Which is easier, to say to the paralytic, ‘Your sins are forgiven,’ or to say, ‘Rise, take up your bed and walk’? 10 But that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins”—he said to the paralytic—11 “I say to you, rise, pick up your bed, and go home.” 12 And he rose and immediately picked up his bed and went out before them all, so that they were all amazed and glorified God, saying, “We never saw anything like this!”

- Colossians 1:15-16 — He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation. 16 For by him all things were created, in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities—all things were created through him and for him.

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-7— Now I would remind you, brothers, of the gospel I preached to you, which you received, in which you stand, 2 and by which you are being saved, if you hold fast to the word I preached to you—unless you believed in vain. 3 For I delivered to you as of first importance what I also received: that Christ died for our sins in accordance with the Scriptures, 4 that he was buried, that he was raised on the third day in accordance with the Scriptures, 5 and that he appeared to Cephas, then to the twelve. 6 Then he appeared to more than five hundred brothers at one time, most of whom are still alive, though some have fallen asleep. 7 Then he appeared to James, then to all the apostles.

Jesus is the only religious leader who fulfilled many prophecies throughout the course of His life. The Old Testament, which was written by many individuals over a period of 1,500 years, contains 332 prophecies which were fulfilled in the birth, ministry, and death of Jesus. It is absolutely impossible that 332 prophecies would come true simply by chance -- the only way this would be possible is if Jesus is God, the promised Messiah. Following are just a few prophecies regarding the life of Jesus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prophecy</th>
<th>Jesus’ fulfillment of the prophecy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah 7:14 - virgin birth</td>
<td>Matthew 1:18, 24-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micah 5:2-3 - born in Bethlehem</td>
<td>Matthew 2:5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah 11:12 - sold for 30 pieces of silver</td>
<td>Matthew 26:15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah 53:12 - crucified with thieves</td>
<td>Matthew 27:38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalm 34:20 - not a single broken bone</td>
<td>John 19:33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah 53:9 - buried in a rich man’s tomb</td>
<td>Matthew 27:57-60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Jesus is God.** The prophecies He fulfilled, the life He led, the miracles He performed, the claims He made of Himself, the words of others regarding who He was, His death, resurrection and ascent into heaven - all point to the fact that He was not just a man, He is God.

**B. Jesus Is Also Fully Human**

Jesus is not only fully God, He is also fully human. The Bible shows us that when He lived on earth, He possessed all the qualities that any other human being possesses. He was born to a human mother
(Matthew 1:18-20) and grew in the same way as any other child (Luke 2:52). He had a human body: He
deprecated hunger (Mark 11:12) and thirst (John 19:28); He became tired (John 4:6); He felt physical pain,
and He bled when He was injured (John 19:34). He had human emotions: He was tempted (Luke 4:1-13); He
deprecated anger (Mark 3:5); He wept in sorrow (John 11:35); He felt anguish at the thought of His
impending death (Luke 22:44). So then, Jesus was 100% God, clothed in 100% humanity.

C. Jesus Is the Only Religious Leader Who Is Risen From The Dead
All four Gospels state that Jesus rose from the grave (see also 1 Cor. 15:1-8). Following is a comparison
between Jesus and other religious leaders in the world:

| Mohammed's tomb | occupied |
| Buddha's tomb   | occupied |
| Confucius' tomb | occupied |
| Jesus' tomb     | EMPTY!   |

Thus, we can summarize that: JESUS IS THE GOD-MAN WHO IS RISEN FROM THE DEAD!

Why Did Jesus Come?
1. Why was it necessary for Jesus Christ to come? Read Romans 3:23 — for all have sinned and fall short of the
glory of God.

2. Because we have all sinned, we all have the need for forgiveness of our sins. Read Hebrews 9:22 —
Indeed, under the law almost everything is purified with blood, and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness of
sins — and describe what it says is required in order for sins to be forgiven:

In the Old Testament, the Israelites were commanded to periodically bring animals to the priest to
be sacrificed for the forgiveness of their sins. These lambs had to be perfect, without spot or blemish.
The priest killed the animal and sprinkled the blood on the altar as a temporary covering for the sins
of the people. This practice of sacrificing lambs is a picture of the coming of Jesus. Look up these
verses and describe what they say about Jesus:

a. John 1:29 — The next day he saw Jesus coming toward him, and said, “Behold, the Lamb of God, who takes away
   the sin of the world!”

b. 1 Peter 1:18-19 — knowing that you were ransomed from the futile ways inherited from your forefathers, not with
   perishable things such as silver or gold, 19 but with the precious blood of Christ, like that of a lamb without blemish or
   spot. What is Jesus called in verse 19? What does His blood do for you (vs. 18)?

Jesus is the “Lamb of God” who died not just to cover our sins temporarily, but to wash them away
forever. He gave His precious blood to redeem us (redeem means “to release from bondage, usually by
means of a price paid”).

3. Jesus knew that without a relationship with Him, life is empty and meaningless. He also knew that
without a relationship with God, people could not experience eternal life in heaven. Read the following
verses and describe what Jesus Himself said about why He came to earth.

a. John 10:10 — The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy. I came that they may have life and have it
   abundantly.

b. John 3:16-17 — “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not
   perish but have eternal life. 17 For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the
   world might be saved through him.

c. Luke 19:10 — “For the Son of Man came to seek and to save the lost.”

8
Jesus came to earth because He loved us and wanted us to have eternal life and a relationship with Him. Since sinful people can’t have a relationship with a holy God, Jesus sacrificed Himself so that our sins might be forgiven and we might be holy. John 15:13 says, “Greater love has no one than this, that he lay down his life for his friends.” Truly, Jesus loves us!

**Jesus Is Coming Back To Earth**

Jesus is alive today, and is very active in the world and in the lives of Christians. However, He is not physically walking on earth as He did 2,000 years ago. But the Bible tells us that Jesus will come back physically one day in the future.

1. What do the following verses tell you about Jesus’ return to earth:

   a. John 14:1-3 — “Let not your hearts be troubled. Believe in God; believe also in me. 2 In my Father’s house are many rooms. If it were not so, would I have told you that I go to prepare a place for you? 3 And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and will take you to myself, that where I am you may be also.”

   b. 1 Thessalonians 4:16-18 — For the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a cry of command, with the voice of an archangel, and with the sound of the trumpet of God. And the dead in Christ will rise first. 17 Then we who are alive, who are left, will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air, and so we will always be with the Lord. 18 Therefore encourage one another with these words.

   c. 2 Thessalonians 1:7-10 — and to grant relief to you who are afflicted as well as to us, when the Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven with his mighty angels 8 in flaming fire, inflicting vengeance on those who do not know God and on those who do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus. 9 They will suffer the punishment of eternal destruction, away from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of his might, 10 when he comes on that day to be glorified in his saints, and to be marveled at among all who have believed, because our testimony to you was believed.

   d. Acts 1:9-11— And when he had said these things, as they were looking on, he was lifted up, and a cloud took him out of their sight. 10 And while they were gazing into heaven as he went, behold, two men stood by them in white robes, 11 and said, “Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into heaven? This Jesus, who was taken up from you into heaven, will come in the same way as you saw him go into heaven.”

There are over 300 references to Christ’s return in the New Testament! Nobody knows exactly when Jesus will return to earth, but from the context of the verses you read, it is clear that God wants us to walk in holiness and eagerly await His coming (see 1 John 3:2-3). When Christ returns, everyone will see Him and recognize that He is indeed the Lord! For Christians it will be a day of rejoicing, but for those who rejected Him, it will be a fearful day of judgment. Those who know Jesus as their Saviour and Lord will enter heaven and enjoy eternal life, but those who did not put their faith in Jesus will be eternally separated from God and will be sent to a place of eternal punishment (see Revelation 20:11-15).

**Knowing Jesus as Saviour and Lord**

In order to be a Christian, we must understand who Jesus is and why He came to earth. But understanding is not enough, we must also believe in Him. But believing in Jesus is not enough either! The Bible tells us that even the demons believe (James 2:19)! In order to be a Christian we must put our faith in Him. We must make a personal decision to repent of our sins, trust Jesus and commit our lives to Him.

The gospel of Jesus Christ can be summarized in 5 main points:

1. **Heaven Is A Free Gift.**
For it is by grace you have been saved, through faith - and this not from yourselves, it is the gift of God, not by works, so that no one can boast. (Eph. 2:8-9)

Heaven is not earned or deserved. Nothing we do (like church attendance, baptism, helping the poor, reading the Bible, etc.) can earn our way to heaven. This can be seen more clearly when we understand what the Bible says about man.

2. **Man Is A Sinner and Separated From God.**

   "All have sinned and fall short of the glory of God." (Rom. 3:23)

   Every person who has ever lived has missed God’s standard of perfection. Thus, we must admit that we are sinners and are separated from God who is Holy. The reason why sinful man cannot enter God’s Holy heaven comes into sharper focus when we look at what the Bible says about God.

3. **God Is Both Merciful And Just.**

   Because God is loving and merciful, He does not want to see us punished in hell for our sin. But because God is also just, He demands that someone has to be punished for our sins. Therefore, there must be atonement for the sinner before God will allow him into heaven. So then, how can God solve this dilemma and show both justice (i.e. punish our sin) and mercy (i.e. allow us into heaven) at the same time? The answer is that He shows His mercy toward us by sending Jesus to earth. As Christ takes our punishment on the cross, God’s justice is then satisfied. Thus, we affirm that "God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life" (John 3:16).

   God loves you so much that He would rather die than spend eternity without you!

4. **Christ Is Our Bridge To God.**

   “For there is one God and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus.” (1 Timothy 2:5)

   As we have already seen in this chapter, Jesus is the infinite God-man who is able to be the only mediator between Holy God and sinful man. We can choose to take the penalty for our sins ourselves in hell or we can choose to have Jesus Christ take the penalty for us on the cross and escape the wrath of God’s judgment (Romans 5:9). If we choose Jesus, then his death on the cross acts a “bridge” to bring us into a relationship with a Holy God.

   Some people try to build a bridge to God by way of good works, religion, morality and so on. The scripture teaches us that all of these attempts are futile. Only the cross of Christ is able to bring us into a relationship with God.

   Someone has said that religion can be spelled with two letters, “D-O.” Religion tells us to “do” this and “do” that in order to work your way to heaven. Biblical Christianity, however, is spelled with four letters, “D-O-N-E.” Jesus has “done” it all for us. By His death and physical resurrection, Jesus paid for our sins and purchased a place in heaven which He offers as a gift, which you can receive as a free gift by faith.

5. **The Gift Of Eternal Life Is Received Through Repentance And Faith.**

   You must personally receive Jesus Christ (Romans 5:17 and 10:13, John 1:12). It is not enough to just KNOW facts about Jesus. You must receive Jesus personally in order to be a Christian and have eternal life. Here’s an example: Just believing that aspirin will cure your headache will not make your pain go away -- you have to swallow it, to “receive” it, before the aspirin is effective. In the same way, knowing mere facts or data about Jesus alone will not save you from the penalty for your sins -- you must make a decision to put your trust in Him and receive Him as your saviour and Lord.

   The first step in this decision is repentance. Jesus preached in Mark 1:15 “Repent and believe the gospel.” The word “repent” means two things:

   1) To turn away from sin, to forsake your sinful choices.
2) To change your mind, as in having remorse over sin.

The second step is to place your faith in Christ alone. We must trust in Christ PLUS NOTHING in order to have a relationship with God and go to heaven. You can do that now by praying from your heart words such as these, “Lord Jesus, I know that I am a sinner and do not deserve eternal life. But I believe you died and rose from the grave to purchase a place in Heaven for me. Jesus, I now repent and turn away from my sins and I turn in faith toward Jesus on the cross. Come into my life and take control of my life. I am placing my trust in You alone for my salvation, and I accept your free gift of eternal life.”

Have you received Jesus as your Lord and Saviour and committed your life to Him? Yes or No?

“Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life, but whoever rejects the Son will not see life, for God’s wrath remains on him” (John 3:36)

Ponder these words of D. James Kennedy as he summarizes the gospel this way:

“God is holy and we are sinful - that’s the problem. And if that were all there were to the problem, God would solve it very quickly. He would send us all to hell. But God is also loving. Infinitely so. And because he loves us, he sent his own son into the world. And he imputed or laid upon Jesus Christ all of our guilt and sin. And then something which confounded me as I first learned it as a father, God poured out his entire wrath for sin upon his own son. And Jesus Christ in body and soul suffered infinitely in our behalf and paid the penalty for our sin. As I told many-- the problem for you is simple--your sins are going to be punished by God. The question is, are they going to be punished on you in hell forever or on Jesus Christ on the cross? If you would prefer the latter, you need to abandon all trust in yourself, repent of your sins. Receive him into your heart as Saviour and Lord trusting in his atoning death as your only hope of salvation. And His promise is ‘He who trusts in me already has everlasting life.’ That’s the good news.”

Who Do You Say Jesus Is?
In this chapter, you have reviewed some basic facts about Jesus. In your own words, describe or write out who you say Jesus is:

Devotional Thought
We close this lesson with a devotional thought from John 15:15. Jesus says in that verse, “I no longer call you servants, because a servant does not know his master's business. Instead, I have called you friends, for everything that I learned from my Father I have made known to you.” There is even a hymn called “Jesus, What a Friend for Sinners” which reminds of this wonderful truth.

Remind yourself that Jesus is the God-man who died and rose from the dead, and is also a friend who will be closer to you than anyone else every day this week!

May your love for Jesus grow even deeper as you think on these things!

Prayer
Close your time together by sharing some prayer requests the both of you may have.
Assignment for Chapter 2

How can I be sure that I am going to Heaven?

**NOTE:** Do not go on to chapter 3 until you have completed and checked each of the following assignments:

- Study and complete the material for chapter 2.
- Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 2 with the person who is discipling you.
- Memorize 1 John 5:12-13, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.
- Review the memory verses from last week.

☐ John 3:16-17 “For God so loved…”
☐ 1 John 5:12-13 “12 Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life. 13 I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God that you may know that you have eternal life.”

**OPENING CONVERSATION FOR LESSON 2:** What was the best thing and the worst thing that happened to your community this past week?
Chapter 2

How can I be sure that I am going to Heaven?

Memorize 1 John 5:12-13 — “Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life. 13 I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God that you may know that you have eternal life.”

A governor of a state has the power to pardon a criminal and set him free. However, no governor has ever pardoned a criminal and then adopted him as a member of his family. But that is exactly what God has done with us! Not only has He pardoned us for our sins, but He has also adopted us into His forever family!

Through grace alone, God has made you His child. As J.I. Packer has written, “Adoption is a family idea, conceived in terms of love, and viewing God as father. In adoption, God takes us into His family and fellowship and establishes us as His children and heirs. Closeness, affection and generosity are at the heart of the relationship. To be right with God the judge is a great thing, but to be loved and cared for by God the Father is even greater.” (Knowing God, InterVarsity Press, 1973).

The scriptures that will be examined in this chapter will clearly teach us that our salvation is completely secure and that we can never lose our adoption. As we shall see, from beginning to end, it is completely God’s grace that gives us this precious sonship/daughtership with the Father. In God’s family you have absolute security!

We Can Know That We Are Saved
Because our relationship is completely dependent upon God’s grace alone, we can have 100% assurance of salvation - an assurance that you are God’s child and that He will never leave you.

1. Read John 1:12-13 — But to all who did receive him, who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God, 13 who were born, not of blood nor of the will of the flesh nor of the will of man, but of God — and then answer the following questions:
   a) What people are spiritually born into God’s family? ___________________________
   b) When you received Christ, what did you become? ___________________________

2. Read 1 John 5:11-13 — And this is the testimony, that God gave us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. 12 Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life. 13 I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God that you may know that you have eternal life — and answer the following questions:
   a) If a person has Jesus in his life, what else does he have? ___________________________
   b) Verse 13 says, “These things I have written to you who believe in the name of the Son of God in order that you may (circle the correct one) hope that feel like try to get know that you have eternal life.”

Our salvation does not depend on our emotions, but on the Bible. Even if we don’t always FEEL like we are saved, we must trust the facts in the Bible that assure us that we can KNOW we have eternal life.
Do Not Depend Upon Emotions

1. People respond differently to the experience of receiving Christ. Some people have very emotional conversions, but others do not. The Apostle Paul had a very dramatic and emotional conversion. Read Acts 22:6-10 about his conversion experience and write down some of the things that he experienced:

   “As I was on my way and drew near to Damascus, about noon a great light from heaven suddenly shone around me. And I fell to the ground and heard a voice saying to me, ‘Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?’ And I answered, ‘Who are you, Lord?’ And he said to me, ‘I am Jesus of Nazareth, whom you are persecuting.’ Now those who were with me saw the light but did not understand the voice of the one who was speaking to me. And I said, ‘What shall I do, Lord?’ And the Lord said to me, ‘Rise, and go into Damascus, and there you will be told all that is appointed for you to do.’

On the other hand, Timothy’s conversion was NOT dramatic or emotional. Read 2 Timothy 1:5 and write what his conversion was like: I am reminded of your sincere faith, a faith that dwelt first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice and now, I am sure, dwells in you as well.

Even though these two men had very different experiences, both were saved when they received Christ, and both received the gift of eternal life. Different personalities have different emotions. Since emotions vary greatly, we should not build our assurance of salvation upon them. Seeking an emotional experience has caused many to wonder if they are really saved.

2. The Bible says: “We walk by faith, not by sight” (2 Corinthians 5:7). This means that we must not live according to what we see and feel, but according to our faith in God and in His Word.

   Look up and write Hebrews 11:6 here: __________________________________________________________________________

   Read John 20:24-29 — Now Thomas, one of the Twelve, called the Twin, was not with them when Jesus came. So the other disciples told him, “We have seen the Lord.” But he said to them, “Unless I see in his hands the mark of the nails, and put out your hand, and place my finger into the mark of the nails, and place my hand into his side, I will never believe.” Eight days later, his disciples were inside again, and Thomas was with them. Although the doors were locked, Jesus came and stood among them and said, “Peace be with you.” Then he said to Thomas, “Put your finger here, and see my hands; and put out your hand, and place it in my side. Do not disbelieve, but believe.” Thomas answered him, “My Lord and my God!” Jesus said to him, “Have you believed because you have seen me? Blessed are those who have not seen and yet have believed.”

   a) What did Thomas say he needed in order to believe? (See verse 25). __________________________________________________________________________

   b) What did Jesus say regarding Thomas’ need for proof (see verse 29)? __________________________________________________________________________

   c) How can this example help us when we are struggling with not “feeling” like we are saved? __________________________________________________________________________

   Our faith must be in God and His Word, not in our feelings.
Upon What Then Do We Base Our Assurance?
The assurance of our salvation is not based on our feelings, but rather upon the authority of God’s Word. We can use a helpful diagram of a truck to illustrate the relationship between the facts of the Bible, our faith, and our feelings. Here is a truck, with a tractor to pull it and a trailer to carry the cargo.

The facts of the Bible are the “engine” which moves the truck, both tractor and trailer, forward. The tractor can move forward with or without the trailer (i.e. the “feelings”). It would not be smart to try to pull the truck by the trailer (the feelings), because the truck would stop and go depending upon what the feelings were. Meanwhile faith guides the tractor from the driver’s seat. In the same way, we Christians should not depend upon feelings or emotions, but rather should place our trust in God and the promises of His Word.

1. Does the Bible ever change?  

2. Do our feelings change?  

Martin Luther was once asked the question, “Martin, do you feel like you’re saved?” He replied, “No, but I KNOW I am.” What Martin Luther was saying is what you know is more important that what you feel.

If we put our faith and trust in the Bible which does not change, then we will be strong and stable like a rock. If we put our faith in our feelings, we will be very unstable, for our faith will change whenever our feelings change. Remember that the truck can go forward with or without the trailer, but it is a worthless trip without feelings. Our salvation is based on our faith in the facts of the Bible, regardless of whether we do or do not have feelings when it comes to our salvation, but

How Can I Know That I Won’t Lose My Salvation?
Some people think that if you sin after you are converted then you will lose your salvation. But let’s look at some key scriptures regarding this issue:

Jesus said: “I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish; no one can snatch them out of my hand. My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all; no one can snatch them out of my Father’s hand” (John 10:28-29).

If you will NEVER perish (in hell) then you are eternally saved. When you receive Jesus, God gives you the gift of eternal life, and that gift is FOREVER. Circle the correct answer to the following questions:

1. How long is eternal life?  
   a) Until I sin  
   b) Two days  
   c) Forever  

2. Who can snatch you out of the Father’s hand?  
   a) Satan  
   b) Sin  
   c) No one  

John 6:37-39 also shows us that we cannot lose our salvation: Jesus said, “All that the Father gives me will come to me, and whoever comes to me I will never drive away. For I have come down from heaven not to do my will but to do the will of him who sent me. And this is the will of [the Father] who sent me, that I shall lose none of all that he has given me, but raise them up at the last day.”
Does Jesus do the Father's will?  Yes ___  No ___

What is the Father's will?  __________________________________________________________

This verse tells us that Jesus will always do the Father's will. The Father's will is that no believer would ever be lost.

The Bible also shows us how the Holy Spirit has a part in preventing believers from losing their salvation. The following verses tell us that a Christian is sealed by the Holy Spirit when he receives Christ, and that seal is a guarantee of our salvation:

- “And you also were included in Christ when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation. Having believed, you were marked in him with a seal, the promised Holy Spirit, who is a deposit guaranteeing our inheritance until the redemption of those who are God's possession -- to the praise of his glory” (Ephesians 1:13-14).

- “And do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, with whom you were sealed for the day of redemption” (Eph. 4:30).

- “[God] set his seal of ownership on us, and put his Spirit in our hearts as a deposit, guaranteeing what is to come” (2 Corinthians 1:22).

    Note: The Greek word “sealed” means “to be branded with an indelible mark of ownership.” Thus, the Holy Spirit “brands” you as God’s eternal possession.

These verses show us that when a person believes in Christ he is sealed immediately and permanently with the Holy Spirit.

The Holy Spirit’s seal on the believer indicates:

1. That the person belongs to God
2. That the security of the person is permanently guaranteed (for only God can break the seal, and He has promised never to break the seal)
3. That God has authority over the person
4. That the person is guaranteed to receive the blessings that have been promised at the day of redemption (when we get to heaven)

Just as it was God’s power that saved you, not your own power (Eph 2:8-9), so too it is God's power that keeps you saved. Read 1 Peter 1:3-5 — Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ! According to his great mercy, he has caused us to be born again to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, 4 to an inheritance that is imperishable, undefiled, and unfading, kept in heaven for you, 5 who by God's power are being guarded through faith for a salvation ready to be revealed in the last time — and write your answers to the following questions:

1. What is God keeping in heaven for us? (vs. 4)  __________________________________________________________

2. What is being done for us by God's power? (vs. 5)  __________________________________________________________

The following example will help to illustrate the promise in the verses above. Imagine that someone gave you 1 million dollars. The money is being kept for you in a bank on the other side of town. If you get in a taxi to go to that bank but the taxi crashes and you never arrive at the bank, then you will not receive the money. Likewise, if you arrive safely in your taxi but find that your money has been stolen by a thief, you also will not receive the money. Both you AND your inheritance must be protected and kept safe in order for you to inherit it. In 1 Peter 1:5, we see that God is protecting you and in verse 4 we see that He is
protecting your inheritance. Our reward is kept safely, and we are protected by God until we arrive to receive it.

Read Romans 8:38-39 — For I am sure that neither death nor life, nor angels nor rulers, nor things present nor things to come, nor powers, 39 nor height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation, will be able to separate us from the love of God in Christ Jesus our Lord. Can anything ever separate us from the love of God? Circle: Yes  No

Romans 11:29 says The gifts and callings of God are irrevocable. The word “irrevocable” means “impossible to retract or revoke” as in an irrevocable decision. Discuss what it means to you and your family for God’s gifts to be irrevocable.

Since God’s gift of eternal life is irrevocable, we can never lose it.

What Happens When A Christian Sins?

Just as a man may slip while riding in a bus and fall down but not fall off the bus, likewise many true believers may slip and fall into sin -- but they do not fall from God’s hand. Sinning does not mean that you have lost your salvation. If you have received Jesus, God has promised to protect and keep you by His power until that final day when you enter into heaven.

If we sin as Christians, we don’t lose our saving relationship with God, but our fellowship with Him can be hurt. It can be compared to a husband and wife who have an argument -- their argument doesn’t nullify their marriage (they are still married to each other), but their argument can hurt their fellowship with each other. Fellowship between a husband and wife can be restored after an argument if apologies are made and forgiveness is sought. In the same way, when we sin we must quickly confess our sins to God and ask for His forgiveness.

Read 1 John 1:9 — If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness. What does God promise to do when we confess our sins to Him?

We must practice regularly confessing our sins to God in order to have close fellowship with Him. But we must always remember that our sins do not cause us to lose our salvation. Hebrews 13:5 says, “...I will never desert you, nor will I ever forsake you.” This is a promise from God! Once He has come into our life and made us new creations, we are adopted into His family forever. He will never let us go.

Remember that our salvation is sure and can never be taken from us, and that we can know this based on the facts of the Bible. If you find yourself doubting your salvation because of your feelings, STOP and remind yourself of the words of God who has promised to save those who believe in and receive Jesus, and to protect them until they arrive safely in heaven.

Read Hebrews 6:4-6 — For it is impossible, in the case of those who have once been enlightened, who have tasted the heavenly gift, and have shared in the Holy Spirit, 5 and have tasted the goodness of the word of God and the powers of the age to come, 6 and then have fallen away, to restore them again to repentance, since they are crucifying once again the Son of God to their own harm and holding him up to contempt.

1. Do you think this passage teaches that you can lose your salvation? ______________________

2. Do you think this passage is a description of a believer or an unbeliever? ______________________

In studying this passage, it becomes apparent that it is not speaking of people who have genuinely become born-again Christians. Rather, it is speaking about people who have been part of a Christian fellowship or church and have heard the gospel message, but have not truly been born again. In every church there are likely to be members who claim that they have received Christ but in fact not truly made a genuine commitment to Christ and have not received the gift of salvation. Please read a verse that follows this
passage from Hebrews, Hebrews 6:9. This verse says that while some people will leave the church and fall away, the ones who were reading those verses who were truly Christians would not fall away but would receive the “things accompanying salvation.” And what are the things accompanying salvation? Of course these things are eternal life and the promised inheritance being kept for us in heaven!

In addition, 1 John 2:19 teaches us that a person who leaves the church or falls away was never truly a Christian in the first place: “They went out from us, but they did not really belong to us. For if they had belonged to us, they would have remained with us; but their going showed that none of them belonged to us.”

Likewise, Matthew 7:21-23 shows us that it is possible for a person who claims to be a Christian and who even performs miracles in the name of Jesus to actually be an unbeliever who has never become a true follower of Jesus Christ. ‘Not everyone who says to me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven, but the one who does the will of my Father who is in heaven. 22 On that day many will say to me, ‘Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in your name, and cast out demons in your name, and do many mighty works in your name?’ 23 And then will I declare to them, ‘I never knew you; depart from me, you workers of lawlessness.’

Perhaps the following illustration will be helpful. A man went his neighbor’s farm one day, and saw a beautiful young mango tree growing. His neighbor offered to sell it to him, so the man bought it. His neighbor put the young tree in a pot and gave it to the man. For a number of days the tree continued to look beautiful, but after about a week, it began to turn brown. The man watered the tree and took good care of it, but in a few more days the tree was completely dead. The man wanted to know what had happened, so he pulled the tree out of the pot. He found out it had no roots. It was simply a branch that had been cut off and placed in a pot of dirt. It was not truly a growing, living tree. It was a phony!

In the same way, it is possible for people in the church to look like real Christians even if they are not. Below the soil they have no roots. They can for a while appear to be true followers of God, even though are not actually rooted in Jesus Christ and are not really living, growing Christians. Judas Iscariot is an excellent example of a false disciple who looked like the real thing. Eventually the truth will become clear, because those who have not actually received Jesus into their lives will fall away from their appearance of faith.

Let us review the passages we have studied that are the basis of our assurance of salvation. Jesus taught us in John 6 and John 10 that we can never lose our salvation. Verses in Ephesians and 2 Corinthians teach us that Christians are permanently sealed by the Holy Spirit. In 1 Peter we are reminded that God’s power has saved us and will keep us safe until we receive the inheritance that is being kept for us in heaven. The Book of Romans tells us that we were predestined by God for eternal salvation from the beginning of time and that God’s calling is irrevocable (cannot be changed). Would the writer of Hebrews contradict all these verses (and many others)? Of course not! We can stand solidly on scripture and say by God’s grace and His promises, we have 100% assurance of salvation!

Discussion Question
If as a non-believer, I came to you and said: “You say you’re going to Heaven, how do you know that?” what would be your answer?

Devotional Thought
Spend some time in prayer this week thanking God for adopting you into His forever family. Thank Him that because of His grace, your salvation is eternally secure.
Assignment for Chapter 3

What is God Like?

NOTE: Do not go on to chapter 4 until you have completed and checked each of the following assignments:

______ Study and complete the material for chapter 3.

______ Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 3 with the person who is discipling you.

______ Memorize Exodus 15:11, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.

______ Review the memory verses from previous weeks.

☐ John 3:16-17 “For God so loved…”
☐ 1 John 5:12-13 “He who has the Son…”

OPENING CONVERSATION FOR LESSON 3: Talk about a relative of yours that you find interesting. What attributes does this person have that you find to be positive/negative?
Chapter 3
What is God Like?

Memorize Exodus 15:11 — Who is like you, O LORD, among the gods? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, awesome in glorious deeds, doing wonders?

What is God Like?
The Bible teaches us that God is ONE God, but He exists as three persons. This is called the doctrine of the Trinity.

Definition of the Trinity
God eternally exists as three persons, Father, Son and Holy Spirit. Each of these three persons is fully God. There is one God.

The doctrine of the Trinity is a difficult doctrine to understand. It is hard to fully comprehend the idea that there is only one God, but He exists in three unique persons. The following Bible verses explain a bit more about the Trinity, and about the role of each person of the Trinity. For additional verses about the Trinity, please see the appendix at the end of this manual.

Read Deuteronomy 6:4 — Hear, O Israel: The Lord our God, the Lord is one.

Read Isaiah 43:10 —
“Ye are my witnesses,” declares the Lord,
“and my servant whom I have chosen,
that you may know and believe me
and understand that I am he.
Before me no god was formed,
nor shall there be any after me.

How many Gods does this say there are? _____.

Now read Matthew 28:19 — Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

Who are the three persons of the Trinity according to Matthew? ___________________________

All three persons of the Trinity have a part in your salvation.

Now, read Ephesians 1:3-14 — Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us in Christ with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places, 4 even as he chose us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and blameless before him. In love 5 he predestined us for adoption as sons through Jesus Christ, according to the purpose of his will, 6 to the praise of his glorious grace, with which he has blessed us in the Beloved. 7 In him we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of his grace, 8 which he lavished upon us, in all wisdom and insight 9 making known to us the mystery of his will, according to his purpose, which he set forth in Christ 10 as a plan for the fullness of time, to unite all things in him, things in heaven and things on earth. 11 In him we have obtained an inheritance, having been predestined according to the purpose of him who works all things according to the counsel of his will, 12 so that we who were the first to hope in Christ might be to the praise of his glory. 13 In him you also, when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and believed in him, were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit, 14 who is the guarantee of our inheritance until we acquire possession of it, to the praise of his glory.
In verses 4-6, it says God the Father “predestined us for adoption as sons.” The word predestined means “To fix upon, decide, or decree in advance; foreordain.” Discuss why God would be able to predestine our adoption?

How does it make you feel to know that God loved you so much that He chose you to be part of His “forever-family” even before the world began? Write down your thoughts about this:

What did Jesus do regarding your salvation according to verses 7 and 8?

In verses 13-14, it says that God the Holy Spirit is like a “partial payment” which guarantees our inheritance in heaven. You may recall that in the previous chapter we discussed how the “seal” of the Holy Spirit means that the security of the believer is permanently guaranteed and the blessings that have been promised at the day of redemption are certain. (Note: More on the Holy Spirit’s role in our salvation will be discussed in Chapter 8.)

Now that we have seen that all three persons of the Trinity are intimately involved in our salvation, let us attempt to answer the question, “What is God like?” What are some of His attributes?

**What Are Some Of The Attributes Of God?**

What is an attribute? An attribute is a particular characteristic or quality. In order for us to better understand God, it is important that we study His attributes. The more we know about who God is, the more we will be able to trust Him with every area of our lives. God’s attributes are usually divided into two categories: transferable attributes and non-transferable attributes. Let us first study the non-transferable attributes of God:

**A. Non-Transferable Attributes**

Non-transferable attributes are attributes that belong to God only, and cannot be transferred to human beings. For example, humans cannot be all-knowing like God is.

1) **God Is Sovereign**

When we say that God is Sovereign we are saying that He controls everything that occurs. The word “sovereign” means “chief, highest or supreme.” The idea of God’s sovereignty should encourage us. It assures the Christian that nothing is out of God’s control and that His plans always triumph.

Read Isaiah 46:10-11 — 10 declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times things not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will accomplish all my purpose,11 calling a bird of prey from the east, the man of my counsel from a far country. I have spoken, and I will bring it to pass; I have purposed, and I will do it.

Discuss how these verses describe God’s sovereignty. ____________________________________________________________

An example of God’s sovereignty can be seen in the story of Joseph in the Old Testament (Genesis 37-50). His brothers were jealous of him, so they sold him as a slave and he was taken to Egypt. But God was with Joseph and after a series of events Joseph eventually became the prime minister of Egypt, a man of very
great importance. When a famine came over the land, Joseph’s brothers came to Egypt to get food, not knowing that Joseph was the prime minister. When they realized who Joseph was, they were afraid that he would be angry with them for the way they treated him years before. But Joseph accepted and forgave them, and gave them all the food they needed. Joseph said these words to his brothers, “You meant evil against me, but God turned it around and used it for good.” (Gen. 50:20). Joseph recognized God’s sovereignty, and saw that God had worked even in bad situations to bring about His purposes.

What impact does the knowledge of God’s sovereignty have on our lives as Christians? Think about the application of this knowledge, and reflect on what area of your life, as well as the life of your community and family. What could change by having a proper understanding and appreciation of this attribute?

________________________________________________________________________________

2) God Is Eternal
There has never been a time when God did not exist. He has no beginning and He has no end. He was not created by anyone else.

Read Psalm 90:2 — Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever you had formed the earth and the world, from everlasting to everlasting you are God.

Read Revelation 1:8 — “I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “who is and who was and who is to come, the Almighty.”

What do these verses tell us about God being eternal?
Since God is eternal, He sees the past and future as clearly as He sees the present. Because of this, He has a better understanding than we do as to what is best for our lives. Knowing that He can see the past and future in a way that we cannot, we should be willing to trust Him with our lives. Consider how your life, or the life of your family and community, could be changed by having a proper understanding and appreciation of this attribute. Write your thoughts here ______________________

(Example: I have been impatient with God about answering my prayer! I choose today to trust His eternal perspective. His timing is perfect, not mine.)

3) God Is Omniscient (All-Knowing)
God knows everything. He possesses all the knowledge there is to have. He does not need to attend school to gain knowledge. He does not increase His knowledge day by day. He already knows all that there is to know. He knows everything about how the universe works, and He also knows our hidden thoughts and feelings.

Read Hebrews 4:13 — And no creature is hidden from his sight, but all are naked and exposed to the eyes of him to whom we must give account.

There are many things to think about as we consider the fact that God is all-knowing. For one thing, we realize that God’s knowledge allows Him to know every one of our sins, yet He still loves us. For another, we must recognize that because God possesses all knowledge, we should seek Him alone -- first, through prayer and Bible Study and second, through consulting other godly Christians -- for wisdom and counseling. We should not look for advice from astrologers, which doctors, fortune-tellers, psychics, non-Christian counselors or anyone who is not a true follower of Jesus Christ.

Read Isaiah 8:19 — And when they say to you, “Inquire of the mediums and the necromancers who chirp and mutter,” should not a people inquire of their God? Should they inquire of the dead on behalf of the living?
Read James 1:5 — *If any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask God, who gives generously to all without reproach, and it will be given him.*

Again, consider how your life, or the life of your family and community, could be changed by having a proper understanding and appreciation of this attribute. Write your thoughts here: ____________________________

(Example: Because God is wiser than any human being, I will seek His will in church and community affairs, not mine.)

4) **God Is Omnipresent (Everywhere)**

God is everywhere at the same time. There is no place in the universe where God is not present. God does not have physical dimensions, but He is present everywhere as a spirit.

Read Psalm 139:7-12

*Where shall I go from your Spirit? Or where shall I flee from your presence? 8 If I ascend to heaven, you are there! If I make my bed in Sheol, you are there! 9 If I take the wings of the morning and dwell in the uttermost parts of the sea, 10 even there your hand shall lead me, and your right hand shall hold me. 11 If I say, “Surely the darkness shall cover me, and the light about me be night,” 12 even the darkness is not dark to you; the night is bright as the day, for darkness is as light with you.*

Read Jeremiah 23:24. *Can a man hide himself in secret places so that I cannot see him? declares the LORD. Do I not fill heaven and earth? declares the LORD.*

What do these verses tell us about God being everywhere?

It is foolish to think that we can hide from God. Jonah tried to run and hide from God but God knew where he was. At every moment, God knows just where we are and what we are doing. Likewise, we are never lost to God. He is always watching over us and caring for us. When we feel lonely or frightened, we can be sure that God is with us.

Consider how your life, or the life of your family and community could be changed by having a proper understanding and appreciation of this attribute and write your thoughts here: ____________________________

(Example: God knows my deepest, darkest sin. Because He is everywhere, I cannot hide from him. Yet, despite all this, He still forgives me and unconditionally loves me! Today I choose to be completely open and honest with Him regarding confession of sin. Confession is not letting God in on a little secret, it is agreeing with God that what I have done is wrong.)

5) **God Is Omnipotent (All Powerful)**

God has infinite power, more than enough strength to do all things. He does not need anything or anybody to give Him power or help. He has so much power that He created the universe with only His words (see Genesis chapter 1). He gave us salvation not by our own power, but by His, because the gospel is the power of God unto salvation (Romans 1:16). Likewise, because God is all-powerful, nothing can take a believer out of His care -- the Christian is kept safe and secure in his salvation. Another wonderful benefit of being a Christian is that God’s infinite power is at work within us, to help us throughout our lives (Ephesians 3:20). Because of this, we have a source of strength when we are weak, and we can be assured that His power can triumph over any circumstance that we face.

Read Jeremiah 32:17—*‘Ah, Lord God! It is you who have made the heavens and the earth by your great power and by your outstretched arm! Nothing is too hard for you.*

Read 1 Chronicles 29: 11-12 — *Yours, O Lord, is the greatness and the power and the glory and the victory and the majesty, for all that is in the heavens and in the earth is yours. Yours is the kingdom, O Lord, and you are exalted as head*
Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and you rule over all. In your hand are power and might, and in your hand it is to make great and to give strength to all.

Read Ephesians 3:20 — Now to him who is able to do far more abundantly than all that we ask or think, according to the power at work within us,

What do these verses say about God’s power? Write your thoughts here:

As before, consider what areas of your life, or that of your family or community, could change by having a proper understanding and appreciation of this attribute. Write your thoughts here:

6) **God Is Immutable (Unchanging)**

God does not change. He is the same every day. He is immutable. Although He has existed from the beginning of time, His character and abilities and attributes remain unchanged. The God that we see throughout the pages of the Old Testament and later the New Testament is just the same today.

Read these three verses that tell us about the unchanging nature of God:
Malachi 3:6 — For I the Lord do not change; therefore you, O children of Jacob, are not consumed.

James 1:17 — Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of lights with whom there is no variation or shadow due to change.

Hebrews 13:8 — Jesus Christ is the same yesterday and today and forever.

Knowing that God does not change is a comforting thing for a Christian. Everything else in this world and life changes—our families, friends, jobs, societies, even our governments change—but our God does not change. Because God does not change, His Word does not change, but remains true and trustworthy. The Bible contains over 7000 thousand promises for those who are Christians, and God can be trusted to keep those promises. In addition to God’s promises remaining unchanged, all the blessings and curses written in the Bible also still apply.

As before consider what areas of your life or that of your family or community could change by having a proper understanding and appreciation of this attribute. Write your thoughts here:

(Example: The Bible contains thousands of promises that God has made to His people. I choose today to trust Him for His reliability and faithfulness. I’ve been meaning to memorize His promise in Lamentations 3:22-25. I’ll start today.)

**B. Transferable Attributes**

Unlike non-transferable attributes, transferable attributes are not found exclusively in God. Although He is the source and embodiment and perfection of these attributes, they can also be transferred (given) to us by God.
1) God Is Holy

What do the two verses below tell us about God? Discuss your answer during your fellowship.

Read Isaiah 6:3 — And one called to another and said: “Holy, holy, holy is the LORD of hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory!”

Read Revelation 4:8 — And the four living creatures, each of them with six wings, are full of eyes all around and within, and day and night they never cease to say, “Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord God Almighty, who was and is and is to come!”

The word “holy” means to be set apart or separated. God is holy because He is separated/set apart from everything that is unclean or unholy. God’s holiness means that He is perfect, spotless, without blemish. He is completely without sin, and it is impossible for Him to do anything that is wrong.

Because God is holy, He demands holiness from His children. We cannot enter heaven unless we are holy and without sin. This holiness is impossible for us to achieve on our own -- the high standard God has set for us shows us that salvation is only possible through faith in God.

Read Colossians 1:22 — he has now reconciled in his body of flesh by his death, in order to present you holy and blameless and above reproach before him. Because of Jesus’ death, what is our position in God’s eyes? List three things below

1)  
2)  
3)  

Jesus’ death on our behalf has made us holy. In the New Testament, Christians are called “saints” 45 times (e.g. Colossians 1:2; Romans 1:7). The Greek word for “saint” means “holy one.” If you are a believer in Jesus, then you are a saint because you have been made holy by the blood of Jesus.

Because we are called holy, we must live according to what we are called. We need to be separated and set apart from sin in this impure world. Ephesians 5:3 says that we should stay away from “any kind of impurity . . . because these are improper for God’s holy people.” While it is impossible in this world for us to be completely without sin as God is, we should do our best to avoid sin and to live holy lives.

The area of my life that could change by having a proper understanding and appreciation of this attribute is:  

(Example: Each day I will ask God to help me keep my mind on pure and holy thoughts (Philippians 4:8), since I have been called out and set apart by Him).

2) God Is Love

God is perfect, infinite love. A beautiful passage in the Bible that speaks of the love of God is 1 John 4:8-16 — 8 Anyone who does not love does not know God, because God is love. 9 In this the love of God was made manifest among us, that God sent his only Son into the world, so that we might live through him. 10 In this is love, not that we have loved God but that he loved us and sent his Son to be the propitiation for our sins. 11 Beloved, if God so loved us, we also ought to love one another. 12 No one has ever seen God; if we love one another, God abides in us and his love is perfected in us. 13 By this we know that we abide in him and he in us, because he has given us of his Spirit. 14 And we have seen and testify that the Father has sent his Son to be the Saviour of the world. 15 Whoever confesses that Jesus is the Son of God, God abides in him, and he in God. 16 So we have come to know and to believe the love that God has for us. God is love, and whoever abides in love abides in God, and God abides in him.

a. What do verses 8 and 16 tell us that God is?  

b. What does Romans 8:38-39 tell us about God’s love for us? *For I am sure that neither death nor life, nor angels nor rulers, nor things present nor things to come, nor powers, 39 nor height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation, will be able to separate us from the love of God in Christ Jesus our Lord* — note your thoughts below:

As a Christian, you can rest secure in the deep love of God. There is nothing you can do to make God love you anymore. There is nothing you can do to make God love you any less. Even though we do not deserve it, God’s love is given to us freely and abundantly.

It is important to note that love is not simply a “feeling.” Rather, the Bible makes it clear that love is an ACTION. In 1 Corinthians 13:4-7, we find 16 verbs telling us that love is always an action. John 3:16 says that “God so loved the world that He GAVE...” Love always gives.

Because we have experienced God’s self-sacrificing love, we have the capacity to demonstrate this love to others. We must not only love those whom we feel deserve our love, but remembering that God loves us even though we do not deserve it, we should love others even when they don’t deserve it (see Luke 6:27-36).

The area of my life that could change by having a proper understanding and appreciation of this attribute is:

(Example: I will “preach the gospel to myself” each day and remind myself that by virtue of the blood of Christ, I am loved and forgiven more than I could ever imagine. Knowing that I have been forgiven much and am loved much, I will also forgive and love others, even those who are the most difficult to love.)

3) God Is Just

God is absolutely just. It is impossible for Him to do anything that is unfair. He never shows partiality, but is fair in all His judgments.

What is God called in 2 Timothy 4:8? *Henceforth there is laid up for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will award to me on that Day, and not only to me but also to all who have loved his appearing.*

What does Psalm 89:14 say is the foundation of God’s throne? *Righteousness and justice are the foundation of your throne; steadfast love and faithfulness go before you._

God’s justice is most applicable in the area of judgment. When people stand before God to be judged, they will receive full and fair justice. This is a comfort to those who have experienced wrong in life, since God will punish the wrong-doers. It is also a warning for those who have been doing evil, because their deeds will be judged. As believers in Jesus, we can be assured that although our deeds on earth will be judged impartially (1 Peter 1:17), we ourselves will escape the wrath of God’s judgment because we have been made holy through the blood of Jesus.

Read 2 Thessalonians 1:5-10 — *This is evidence of the righteous judgment of God, that you may be considered worthy of the kingdom of God, for which you are also suffering—*6 since indeed God considers it just to repay with affliction those who afflict you,
7 and to grant relief to you who are afflicted as well as to us, when the Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven with his mighty angels 8 in flaming fire, inflicting vengeance on those who do not know God and on those who do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus. They will suffer the punishment of eternal destruction, away from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of his might, 10 when he comes on that day to be glorified in his saints, and to be marveled at among all who have believed, because our testimony to you was believed — and answer the following questions about God’s judgment:

a) What will God do when He judges those who have caused you trouble? (vs. 6) __________

b) What will God do for those who have been troubled? (vs. 7) ____________________________

c) What will be the result of God’s judgment for those who have not put their faith in Jesus? (vs. 8-9) ____________

Since our desire is to imitate God, we should be careful not to show unfair favoritism or partiality in our relationships with others. We should treat people in a just manner. We should also remember that it is not our responsibility to avenge the wrongs done to us, but instead we must forgive and leave justice to God (Deut. 32:35).
The area of my life that could change by having a proper understanding and appreciation of this attribute is:

(Example: Today, I will start trusting God's justice and stop depending upon my understanding when things seem unfair.)

4) God Is Truth
It is impossible for God to lie (see Titus 1:2), because God is absolute truth. Man is constantly searching for truth, but sadly man usually looks for truth in sources other than God. In John 14:6 Jesus said, “I am the Truth.” It is only in God and His Word that truth can be found.

What does Jesus tell us about truth in John 8:32 — and you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free.”

When a person comes to Jesus Christ his search for truth ends, and true freedom begins. If we have Jesus in our life, we have the Truth in our life. Because God is truth, we can also be assured that His Word, the Bible, is truthful and completely trustworthy. Since we have the Truth in our lives and the Bible to direct us, we must always do our best to be truthful in all things. When we tell a lie, it is like scraping our fingernails on a blackboard before the holy ears of God. He disdainst it! Proverbs 12:22 says that lying is an “abomination.”
The area of my life that could change by having a proper understanding and appreciation of this attribute is:

(Example: I will try to be a truth-teller in all situations. By God's grace, I will stop excusing my habit of exaggeration, and seek to be truthful in all things. I will start calling lying exactly what it is: sin.)

Other transferable attributes include righteousness, faithfulness, mercy, patience plus others. So then to review:
Non-Transferable Attributes          Transferable Attributes*
Sovereign                        Holy
Eternal / Self-Existent          Perfect Love
Omniscient (all-knowing)          Just
Omni-Present (everywhere at once) Truth
All-Powerful                      Righteous
Unchanging                        Faithful
                                    Merciful
                                    Patient

(*only in the sense that we can attain some measure of God’s character.)

C. The Names of God
Proverbs 18:10 says, “The name of the Lord is a strong tower; the righteous run to it and are safe.” In order to be able to fully understand the “strong tower” of the name of the Lord, it is important to know His names.

God has many names which are revealed to us in the Bible. Each of these names tells us something about who He is and describes some of His attributes. Some of His names are given by God Himself to reveal who He is. Other names are given by the saints of the Old Testament. Studying God’s names helps us to know Him better and trust Him more completely. Following are some of the names of God in the original Hebrew of the Old Testament.

1) Elohim: This name means “Creator God” (see Exodus 3:6). It is given by God Himself and used many times throughout the Old Testament. This name reminds us that God is the powerful creator of the universe.

2) Jehovah: This name means “I Am Who I Am” or “The Self-Existent One” (see Exodus 3:14 and 6:2-4), and is used 6,823 times in the Old Testament. This name reminds us that God exists by His own power. He was not created, but has existed from the beginning of time. This name was considered to be SO HOLY that scribes who made copies of the Old Testament scriptures would treat the name “jehovah” in a very special manner. They would stop writing, wash their hands, and then pick up a writing instrument used only to write the name “Jehovah.” After writing the name, they would then pick up their other writing instrument and continue to copy the scriptures.

3) Jehovah Jireh: This name means “The Lord Will Provide” (see Genesis 22:14). It reminds us that God will provide for our needs.

4) Jehovah Nissi: This name means “The Lord is My Banner” (see Exodus 17:15), and reminds us that God is our banner of victory in the battle. His name is the banner we hold before us as we fight against our enemy, Satan.

5) Jehovah Tsidkenu: This name means “The Lord is My Righteousness” (see Jeremiah 23:6, 2 Corinthians 5:21 and Romans 3:22). It reminds us that it is only through God the Son, Jesus, that we can be righteous.

6) Jehovah Raah: This name means “The Lord Is My Shepherd” (see Psalm 23:1 and John 10:14). It reminds us of God’s gentle care and guidance.

7) Jehovah Shalom: This name means “The Lord Is My Peace” (see Judges 6:24 and Ephesians 2:14). It reminds us that God can give us peace and quiet the storms in our life.

8) Jehovah Rapha: This name means “The Lord is My Healer” (see Exodus 15:26). It reminds us that it is through the death of Jesus that we are spiritually healed from the stain of our sins. It also reminds us that God has the power to heal our physical illnesses when it is within His plan for our life.

9) Jehovah Mekoddishkem: This name means “The Lord is My Sanctifier” (see Exodus 31:13). The
word “sanctify” means to set apart or make holy, so this name reminds us that God makes us holy in His sight.

10) **Jehovah Shammah:** This name means “The Lord Is There” (see Ezekiel 48:35). It reminds us that even when we feel all alone in times of pain or difficulty, we are never really alone because God is always there with us.

11) **El Elyon:** This name means “The God Most High” (see Genesis 14:20 and Psalm 78:35), and reminds us that God is higher than Satan, angels and all creation. He is the most high ruler over everybody and everything.

12) **El Roi:** This name means “The God Who Sees” (see Genesis 16:13). It reminds us that God sees everything that happens to us, and even sees and knows our thoughts and worries.

13) **El Shaddai:** This name means “The Mighty God” (see Genesis 17:1), and reminds us that God is powerful and “able to do immeasurably more than all we ask or imagine” (Eph. 3:20). Because the word “Shad” means “breast” in Hebrew, El Shaddai could also refer to the God who feeds and nurtures and comforts us.

14) **Adonai:** This name means “My Lord” (see Genesis 15:2), and reminds us that all areas of our lives need to be submitted to God’s lordship.

**Devotional Thought:** Take 15 minutes and pray together with the person who is discipling you. Give praise to God for some of God’s attributes that you studied in this chapter, naming them one by one. Bring any prayer requests you have before Him, using the names that remind you of His ability to handle your requests. (For example: If you are experiencing anxiety/ worry -- call upon the name of Jehovah Shalom.) Practice using God’s names in your own prayer times this week.
Assignment for Chapter 4

How Should I Study The Bible?

NOTE: Do not go on to chapter 5 until you have completed and checked each of the following assignments:

_____ Study and complete the material for chapter 4.

_____ Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 4 with the person who is discipling you.

_____ Make sure you have completed the chart on page 40 with your Bible study plan, and have discussed this with the person who is discipling you.

_____ Memorize the hand illustration on page 36 and tell it to the person who is discipling you.

_____ Memorize Psalm 119:9-11, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.

_____ Memorize the names of the first 14 books of the New Testament (Matthew through 2 Thessalonians), and tell them to the person who is discipling you.

_____ Review the memory verses from previous weeks.

☐ John 3:16-17 “For God so loved…”
☐ 1 John 5:12-13 “He who has the Son…”
☐ Exodus 15:11 “Who among the Gods…”
☐ Psalm 119:9-11 “How can a young man…”

OPENING CONVERSATION FOR LESSON 4: When you pick up the newspaper, which section do you tend to read first?
Part Two: The Disciplines of a Christian

Chapter 4

How Should I Study The Bible?

Memorize Psalm 119:9-11 — How can a young man keep his way pure? By guarding it according to your word. 10 With my whole heart I seek you; let me not wander from your commandments! 11 I have stored up your word in my heart, that I might not sin against you.

A. The Importance Of The Bible
The Bible is the foundational element of the Christian life. In no other way does God reveal as much of Himself as He does through the Bible, and it is from the Bible that we learn all of the basics for living as a Christian. As God speaks to us through His Word, we come to know Him and to understand and obey His principles for life and ministry. The Bible is not an ordinary book, but is “living and active” (Hebrews 4:12). In a very special way the Bible is a supernatural book, and reading and interacting with it changes us for the good. A thorough knowledge of the Bible is vital as we strive to follow after God.

B. What Makes The Bible So Unique?
The Bible is unique -- it is not like any other book. As we study its uniqueness, we come to the conclusion that it is not an ordinary book written by men, but that it must be truly the Word of God. Let us look at some of the ways in which it is unique:

1) It is different in its nature from all other books
Most books are written within one or two years by just one author, but the Bible is vastly different from all other books. It consists of sixty-six different books, written by 44 different writers, in three different languages, written on 3 continents (Africa, Asia and Europe) under different circumstances. The writers were from almost every social rank -- statesmen, peasants, kings, herdsmen, fishermen, priests, tax-collectors, and tentmakers; educated and uneducated, Jews and Gentiles. Most of the writers were unknown to each other, and they wrote at various periods over the span of about 1600 years. This is amazing in itself, but the most incredible thing is that despite the tremendous variety of writers and the time span over which the Bible was written, it is one unified book dealing with one main subject, the subject of man’s redemption by God.

2) It is the only book that is “God-breathed”
Read 2 Timothy 3:16-17 — All Scripture is breathed out by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, and for training in righteousness, 17 that the man of God may be complete, equipped for every good work.

What does this verse say about where scripture came from?

Since the New Testament was originally written in Greek, it can be helpful to look up the meaning of the original Greek words in order to better understand the meaning of a verse. The word “inspired” in Greek literally means “God-breathed.” This indicates that the Bible has been BREATHED OUT by the breath of God. As God breathed out the words, man wrote them down. God is the source and ultimate author of Scripture. The word for “moved” means to “be driven or carried by the wind,” like wind moving a sail boat (cf. Acts 27:15,17). The writers of scripture were carried along/driven as the Holy Spirit breathed on them.

Read 2 Peter 1:20-21 — knowing this first of all, that no prophecy of Scripture comes from someone’s own interpretation. 21 For no prophecy was ever produced by the will of man, but men spoke from God as they were carried along by the Holy Spirit. Write down where prophecies in scripture come from: __________________________
3) **It is the only book that teaches complete forgiveness of sin**
   Other religious books, such as the Koran and others, DO NOT teach that man can be completely forgiven by God. The Bible is the only book that teaches that we can be completely forgiven by God.

4) **It is the only book with fulfilled prophecy**
   Another thing that sets the Bible apart from all other religious books is that it has fulfilled prophecy. Hundreds of prophecies given in the Bible have already been fulfilled. An example of a fulfilled prophecy is given below:

   *Look up and read Ezekiel 26:4-14, which was written about 586 B.C. It says:*
   1) Tyre would be destroyed by Nebuchadnezzar (vs. 4 and 7)
   2) It would be leveled into a slab of rock as the buildings are torn down and thrown into the sea (vs. 14).
   3) Fishing nets would be spread across the slabs of rock (vs. 14).
   4) It would never be rebuilt (vs. 14).

   *Any reference encyclopedia or Wikipedia will tell you that:*
   1) Tyre was destroyed by Nebuchadnezzar in a 13 year siege (585 to 572 B.C.)
   2) Alexander the Great leveled it in 332 B.C. and threw all the debris into the sea.
   3) Some encyclopedias even show a picture of the great slabs of stones where the fisherman spread out their fishing nets.
   4) Never rebuilt: It was "reduced almost to ashes--a blow from which it has never fully recovered." *Encyclopedia Americana, Vol. 27, page 331.*

   **Ezekiel's prophecy was completely accurate!**

   This is just one example, but there are hundreds of others. There are 332 prophecies in the Old Testament about the coming Messiah and all of these were fulfilled by Jesus (see page 9 for some of the prophecies that Jesus fulfilled).

   Read Deuteronomy 18:21-22 — *And if you say in your heart, 'How may we know the word that the Lord has not spoken?—22 when a prophet speaks in the name of the Lord, if the word does not come to pass or come true, that is a word that the Lord has not spoken; the prophet has spoken it presumptuously. You need not be afraid of him.* What does this passage tell us about how to determine if God has spoken? We know that God has spoken because His words come true! There is no possible way that the prophecies written in the Bible could have come true by chance or coincidence alone. The reason the prophecies came true is because the Bible is the Word of God, who knew the future long before it happened.

   No other religious book has fulfilled prophecy like the Bible. If a person really wants to know which book is God's word, then he must set aside ALL books which do not have fulfilled prophecy. Thus, the ONLY book which qualifies as the word of God is the BIBLE.

5) **It is supported by archaeological evidence**
   In addition to the above reasons, we can believe the Bible because archaeology (the science of finding and studying what is left of ancient cities and cultures) has agreed with what the Bible says. For example, in 1936 an archeologist named Dr. John Garstang, from Britain, was doing some research on the remains of the ancient city of Jericho. He concluded that the walls did “fall down flat” as it says in Joshua 6:20. In addition, the city was clearly destroyed by fire (Joshua 6:24). Finally, he concluded that the date of this destruction was about 1400 B.C. Every one of his unbiased scientific conclusions
coincided exactly with what the Bible says in Joshua 6.

C. How Can I Know The Bible Better?

Since the Bible is God's Word, it is important that we know it well. There are 5 different methods for knowing the Bible -- hearing, reading, studying, memorizing and meditating on the scriptures. The following diagram, which is used with permission from the Navigators, compares these five methods of learning the Bible to the five fingers of your hand. If you hold the Bible with only one or two fingers, it is easy to lose your grip. But as you use more fingers, your grasp of the Bible becomes stronger. Likewise, when we hear, read, study, memorize and meditate on the Word of God, our grasp of the Bible becomes stronger so we can more effectively apply it to our lives.

1) Hear the Bible

It is important to hear the Word of God preached on a regular basis. It is also important to pay attention to what we hear, and to remember it. Most Christians hear the Word of God preached, but only a few remember what they hear. To help remember what we hear, we should take notes on the sermons we hear on Sundays.

Look up Romans 10:17 and write it here: __________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________

Read Luke 8:15 — As for that in the good soil, they are those who, hearing the word, hold it fast in an honest and good heart, and bear fruit with patience.

Read Luke 11:28 — But he said, “Blessed rather are those who hear the word of God and keep it!”

From these passages what can we tell about the kind of heart God wants for us when we hear the Word? And whom does Jesus say will be blessed? __________________________________________________________

2) Read the Bible

It is important to spend some time every day reading the Bible. Read Deut. 17:19 — And it shall be with him, and he shall read in it all the days of his life, that he may learn to fear the Lord his God by keeping all the words of this law and these statutes, and doing them — and then list the reasons why we should read the Bible daily: ____________________________

Look up and write out Revelation 1:3 in your own words. __________________________________________________________

________________________________________________________

3) Study the Bible

Studying is more than just careful reading. Studying involves spending the time to try to learn more about the verses we are reading, writing down what we discover as we read, and applying what we have learned to our lives. It is a good idea to have a special notebook to write the things you learn as you study the Word of God.

What should be our goal in studying the Bible? See 2 Timothy 2:15 — Do your best to present yourself to God as one approved, a worker who has no need to be ashamed, rightly handling the word of truth.
When you are studying a passage of scripture, you should always begin with prayer, asking God to help you to understand what you are studying. Following that, you should do three main things:

a. **Observe** - At first just read through the passage, making general observations on what it is about. Ask questions like, “Who, What, Where, When and Why?”

b. **Interpret** - Read the passage again slowly, verse by verse, thinking about the meaning. If you have other books available (like commentaries, Bible dictionaries, etc.), you can use those to help you learn more about the passage.

c. **Apply** - Think about how this passage might apply to your own life. Ask yourself:

   *Is there any... Example to follow? Lesson to learn? Command to obey? Sin to forsake? Error to avoid? Wrong to heal? Promise to claim? Prayer to pray? Reason to give thanks or praise? Thought about God for me to understand? Pray that God would help you to follow what the Word of God has said.*

Using the method outlined above, spend 10 or 15 minutes studying Jeremiah 17:5-8.

---

Thus says the Lord:

“Cursed is the man who trusts in man
and makes flesh his strength,
whose heart turns away from the Lord.
6 He is like a shrub in the desert,
and shall not see any good come.
He shall dwell in the parched places of the wilderness,
in an uninhabited salt land.
7 “Blessed is the man who trusts in the Lord,
whose trust is the Lord.
8 He is like a tree planted by water,
that sends out its roots by the stream,
and does not fear when heat comes,
for its leaves remain green,
and is not anxious in the year of drought,
for it does not cease to bear fruit.”

---

1. **Observe: What is this passage about?**

2. **Interpret: What is the meaning of this passage?**

3. **Apply: How can I apply this passage to my life?**

---

To further help you in your Bible study, the following books are strongly recommended for your long-term investment:

- *The Reformation Study Bible* or the MacArthur Study Bible (both by Nelson Publishers)
- *The Hebrew-Greek Key Study Bible* (AMG Publishers, edited by Spiros Zodhiates)
- *Unger’s Bible Dictionary* (Moody Press)
- *Strong’s Concordance* (Royal Publishers)

In addition, many excellent Bible study tools can be found on the internet.

4) **Memorize the Bible**

Review Psalm 119:11, which is your memory verse for this chapter. What does it say we should do with the Word of God?

Read Matthew 4:1-11. How did Jesus overcome Satan’s three temptations?

*Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil. 2 And after fasting forty days and forty nights, he was hungry. 3 And the tempter came and said to him, “If you are the Son of God, command these stones to become loaves of bread.” 4 But he answered, “It is written, “Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that comes from the mouth of God.””*
5 Then the devil took him to the holy city and set him on the pinnacle of the temple 6 and said to him, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, “He will command his angels concerning you,” and “On their hands they will bear you up, lest you strike your foot against a stone.””

7 Jesus said to him, “Again it is written, ‘You shall not put the Lord your God to the test.’” 8 Again, the devil took him to a very high mountain and showed him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory. 9 And he said to him, “All these I will give you, if you will fall down and worship me.” 10 Then Jesus said to him, “Be gone, Satan! For it is written, “You shall worship the Lord your God and him only shall you serve.”

11 Then the devil left him, and behold, angels came and were ministering to him.

5) **Meditating On The Bible**

Note how the thumb is the most important finger for grasping an object. Without a thumb, you cannot hold the object tightly. Likewise, meditating on the Bible is necessary in order to have a good grasp of the Bible.

What is meditation? The Hebrew word for “meditation” is related to the word “rumination” which means “to chew repeatedly for an extended period of time.” Thus, one definition of biblical meditation is “constantly chewing over the Word of God until we can digest all of the good things it contains.” It is prayerful reflection with the goal of understanding and applying what we have read and studied. Meditation involves thinking about what we are learning from God’s Word, and praying that God would conform our lives to be obedient to what His Word teaches. Read the following verses and write what blessings come to a person who meditates on God’s Word:

**Psalm 1:1-3**

_Blessed is the man who walks not in the counsel of the wicked, nor stands in the way of sinners, nor sits in the seat of scoffers; 2 but his delight is in the law of the Lord, and on his law he meditates day and night. 3 He is like a tree planted by streams of water that yields its fruit in its season, and its leaf does not wither. In all that he does, he prospers._

**Joshua 1:8** — _This Book of the Law shall not depart from your mouth, but you shall meditate on it day and night, so that you may be careful to do according to all that is written in it. For then you will make your way prosperous, and then you will have good success._

Describe the blessings as described in Psalms and Joshua:

Someone has said, "If you know how to worry, then you know how to meditate!" Worry is simply negative meditation! Instead of thinking over and over again about something negative, why not meditate on the positive promises of God's word? Let THAT go over and over in your head instead. Here are just a few ways to meditate on scripture:

1) Spend time praying about how to apply what you read to your life.
2) Personalize the passage by putting your own name into it (for example John 3:16: “God so loved ME that he gave his only Son, so that if I believe in him I will not perish but have everlasting life.”)
3) Sing a song with words from the Bible, thinking about the meaning of the words and making your song a prayer.
D. Making A Bible Study Plan
Have you ever had a broken finger? It’s hard to hold onto anything. Likewise, if just one area of your “spiritual fingers” is “broken”, your understanding and growth are compromised. Of the five fingers (Hearing, Reading, Studying, Memorizing, and Meditating), which is your weakest finger? Which is your strongest? How do you plan to increase your strength in the area(s) where you are weak? In order to improve in your weak areas, it is good to set goals for yourself. Use the chart below to analyze your current habits and to set new goals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>What I am doing now</th>
<th>My plans to improve</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hearing the Word</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading the Word</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Studying the Word</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memorizing the Word</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meditating on the Word</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Assignment for Chapter 5

How Should I Pray?

NOTE: Do not go on to chapter 6 until you have completed and checked each of the following assignments:

_____ Study and complete the material for chapter 5.

_____ Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 5 with the person who is discipling you.

_____ Memorize 1 John 5:14, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.

_____ Memorize the names of the last 13 books of the New Testament (1 Timothy through Revelation), and tell them to the person who is discipling you.

_____ Review the goals for Bible study you established at the end of chapter 4 on page 40.
   How did you do this past week in meeting your goals?

_____ Review the memory verses from previous weeks, and review the names of the first 14 books of the New Testament.

☐ John 3:16-17 “For God so loved…”
☐ 1 John 5:12-13 “He who has the Son…”
☐ Exodus 15:11 “Who among the Gods…”
☐ Psalm 119:9-11 “How can a young man…”
☐ 1 John 5:14 “This is the confidence…”

OPENING CONVERSATION FOR LESSON 5: Describe a time in your life when God gave you a very clear answer to your prayer.
Chapter 5
How Should I Pray?

Memorize 1 John 5:14—And this is the confidence that we have toward him, that if we ask anything according to his will he hears us.

Prayer is intimate fellowship with God. It is essential to our worship, growth, and maturity. Just as earthly relationships need communication in order to grow and mature, your relationship with God grows and matures through the discipline of prayer.

"The greatest tragedy of life is not unanswered prayer, but unoffered prayer."  F.B. Meyer

A. Why Do We Pray?
1) Prayer glorifies God (John 14:13).
2) God commands us to pray (1 Thessalonians 5:17).
3) Prayer allows us to communicate with God and have fellowship with Him (Proverbs 15:8).
4) Jesus Christ made prayer a priority in His life (Matthew 14:23 and 26:36).
5) Prayer achieves results for the glory of God (Luke 18:1).
6) Prayer helps us achieve spiritual growth (Jude verse 20).
7) Prayer is the tangible expression of our complete dependence upon God. (Mat. 6:11)
8) Prayer replaces our anxiety with God’s peace (Philippians 4:6-7).

Jerry Bridges has written these words, “We may assent to the fact that we are dependent on Christ, but if our prayer life is meager or perfunctory, we thereby deny it.” (The Discipline of Grace, InterVarsity Press, p.137).

B. To Whom Do We Pray?
Because of the death of Jesus Christ on our behalf, we are able to have a personal relationship with God. This personal relationship allows us to pray directly to God. Through the blood of Jesus we are His children (John 1:12-13; Hebrews 4:14-16) and we are holy in His eyes (Colossians 1:22), and because of this we have the privilege of directly communicating with Him. We do not have to go through Mary, an angel, or one of the saints in order to talk to God.

There are many churches that teach that we can pray to God through one of the saints, an angel, or through Mary. These churches teach that the saints or Mary or angels can “intercede” for us by taking our prayer to God the Father on our behalf. Is this idea biblical? To answer that question, we must look at the word “intercede.”

First of all, the word “intercession” or “intercede” (which means “to ask or plead on behalf of another person”) occurs only eleven times in the Bible. Of those eleven verses:

~ Four speak about Jesus making intercession for us (Rom. 8:34; Heb. 4:14-16 and 7:25; Isaiah. 53:12]
~ Two speak about the Holy Spirit making intercession on our behalf (Romans 8:26 and 27).
~ Five speak about a human making intercession to God on behalf of another human. (However, every example in the Bible where a human intercedes for another human occurs while the person is ALIVE here on earth. For example: Gen. 23:8, 1 Sam. 7:5, 1 Kings. 13:6, 1 Sam.
12:23, 1 Tim. 2:1. In the entire Bible, there is not ONE example of someone who is dead making intercession for someone here on earth.)

It is clear that there is no example in the Bible of prayers being made through a person who has died. Rather, the Bible says time and time again that God is the one who personally hears and answers our prayers.

Many people believe that since Mary was the mother of Jesus, she has a special relationship with Him in heaven, and can therefore bring our prayers before Him. But there is no place in the Bible where we are told to pray to Mary. Jesus himself did not give His mother any special status over any other obedient Christian.

Read Matthew 12:46-50 — While he was still speaking to the people, behold, his mother and his brothers stood outside, asking to speak to him. 48 But he replied to the man who told him, “Who is my mother, and who are my brothers?” 49 And stretching out his hand toward his disciples, he said, “Here are my mother and my brothers! 50 For whoever does the will of my Father in heaven is my brother and sister and mother.” Who does Jesus say is his mother (and brother and sister)?

It is certainly true that Mary was a very godly woman who was blessed with the very special privilege and honor of being the human mother of the Son of God. However, Mary was not God, she had no special powers, and she was not given the position of mediator between God and humans.

Who is the only mediator that we have? Look up the following verse and give your answer:

1 Timothy 2:5

The Bible makes it clear that we should pray directly to God. When Jesus was asked by His disciples, “Teach us to pray,” He told them to pray to God the Father (Matthew 6:9). There are also examples in the Bible of praying directly to Jesus (Acts 7:59, 2 Corinthians 12:8-9). Generally speaking, a Christian prays TO the Father, THROUGH Jesus Christ, BY the power of the Holy Spirit. Attempting to pray to God through any other mediator is not biblical.

C. What Are The Four Parts Of Prayer?
There are four main elements that should be included in our prayers in order to have a balanced prayer life. You can easily remember these four elements from the acronym “A-C-T-S” which stands for adoration, confession, thanksgiving and supplication.

1) Adoration: Praise God not for what He has done for you, but simply for who He is. A good way to practice adoration is by praising God using His various names and attributes (see chapter 3).

Read the following verses to see why God is worthy of our adoration:

1 Chronicles 29:11-12 — Yours, O Lord, is the greatness and the power and the glory and the victory and the majesty, for all that is in the heavens and in the earth is yours. Yours is the kingdom, O Lord, and you are exalted as head above all. 12 Both riches and honor come from you, and you rule over all. In your hand are power and might, and in your hand it is to make great and to give strength to all.
Psalm 145:1-6 —
1 I will extol you, my God and King, and bless your name forever and ever.
2 Every day I will bless you and praise your name forever and ever.
3 Great is the Lord, and greatly to be praised, and his greatness is unsearchable.
4 One generation shall commend your works to another, and shall declare your mighty acts.
5 On the glorious splendor of your majesty, and on your wondrous works, I will meditate.
6 They shall speak of the mighty of your awesome deeds, and I will declare your greatness.

Note: A good way to pray with adoration is to read a psalm such as 145, pausing after each verse to personally praise God for what you just read.

2) Confession: The Greek word for “confess” means “to say the same thing.” God calls our sins abominations. We need to say the same thing about our sins as we confess them one by one before God; that is, we need to agree with God that our sins are terrible. We also need to ask Him to forgive us for the sins we cannot remember or are not aware of. Remember that God knows all of our sins.

Why is confession important?

Psalm 32:3-5

3 For when I kept silent, my bones wasted away through my groaning all day long.
4 For day and night your hand was heavy upon me; my strength was dried up as by the heat of summer.
Selah
5 I acknowledged my sin to you, and I did not cover my iniquity; I said, “I will confess my transgressions to the Lord,” and you forgave the iniquity of my sin.

Psalm 66:18

If I had cherished iniquity in my heart, the Lord would not have listened.

A: adoration
C: confession
T: thanksgiving
S: supplication

1 John 1:9

If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

3) Thanksgiving: Express thanks for everything which God has given you. Give thanks even in the painful experiences and ask God to help you see the purposes for it (1 Thessalonians 5:18).

Read Psalm 107:1 and 8. 1 Oh give thanks to the LORD, for he is good, for his steadfast love endures forever!
8 Let them thank the Lord for his steadfast love, for his wondrous works to the children of man!

(What are some ways that you have seen God’s loving kindness in your life?)

4) Supplication: Present your requests to God. This part of prayer asks God to provide for your needs and the needs of others. What are some things we should ask God for?
~ Pray for worries that you may have (Philippians 4:6-7)
~ Pray for yourself and your family to be lined up with God’s will (Matthew 6:10)
~ Pray for friends and relatives to come to know Jesus (Romans 10:1)
~ Pray for your church leaders and your political leaders (1 Tim 2:1-2)
~ Pray for the missionaries in your church (Col. 4:2-4 and Matt. 9:37-38)
~ Pray for yourself. Pray as specifically as possible. (Heb. 4:16 and Matt. 7:7-8)

It is a good idea to write out what you want to pray for before you begin, so that you will not forget something or lose your focus while you are praying. Another reason for writing down your prayer requests is so that you will be able to look back later and see how God has answered your prayers.

D. Does God Always Answer My Prayers?

God always answers our prayers. However, God doesn’t always answer our prayers in the way we hope or expect. His answers to our prayers will vary according to His plan for our lives:

1) Sometimes the answer is "NO." God does not always say yes. Even when we pray with a clean heart and right motives and unwavering faith, God will sometimes say “No.”

Read 2 Corinthians 12:7-9 — So to keep me from becoming conceited because of the surpassing greatness of the revelations, a thorn was given me in the flesh, a messenger of Satan to harass me, to keep me from becoming conceited. 8 Three times I pleaded with the Lord about this, that it should leave me. 9 But he said to me, “My grace is sufficient for you, for my power is made perfect in weakness.” Therefore I will boast all the more gladly of my weaknesses, so that the power of Christ may rest upon me.

What was God’s answer to Paul’s request?

Read Luke 22:41-42 — And he withdrew from them about a stone’s throw, and knelt down and prayed, 42 saying, “Father, if you are willing, remove this cup from me. Nevertheless, not my will, but yours, be done.”

What was God the Father’s answer to Jesus’ prayer?

We can see from the above verses (and other examples in the Bible) that God sometimes says “No” to the requests of His children, even if His children are solid Christians who are praying in faith. Why does God say “No” to some prayers? We can’t always know the answer to that question, but some possible reasons are given below:

a) Unrepentant, unconfessed sin
   God wants us to confess our sins and repent so that we are in good fellowship with Him before we bring requests before Him. It is important that we regularly confess sin in our life so that we can come before God in prayer with a clean heart (see Psalm 32:3-5, Psalm 66:18, and 1 John 3:22).

b) We ask wrongly
   James 4:3 says, “When you ask, you do not receive, because you ask with wrong motives, that you may spend what you get on your pleasures.” Our motives must be correct when we request something from God.

c) Opposing prayers
   Sometimes our prayers are in opposition to the prayers of another Christian. For example, let’s suppose that one Christian man is praying for his son’s football team to win while at the same time another Christian is praying for the opposing team to win! Whose prayer should God answer? God cannot always say yes to everyone’s request.

d) We are asking for something that is not God’s will
   1 John 5:14 says, “...if we ask anything according to His will, He hears us.” If what we ask for is
not in God’s will for our lives, He will not give us what we request.

e) *God understands more than we do about the situation*

We must realize that God is all-knowing and that He can see the future. Because of this, He understands much more than we do about our life (and the lives of others around us) and can know what is best for us. We must trust His knowledge and His wisdom and His love. For more on this see the appendix on “Perspectives on Pain and Suffering” at the end of Vol II.

f) *God has granted humans free will (Genesis 2:16-17).*

Because God has chosen to give us the freedom to choose our own actions, God may say, “No” to a prayer request in order to allow man’s free will, which in this sinful world will sometimes result in innocent people suffering.

A good verse to remember when God says “No” to our requests is Romans 8:28, “And we know that in all things God works for the good of those who love Him, who have been called according to His purpose.” Even when God’s answer to our prayer is “No,” we can know that everything that happens in our life will work together for our good. This promise is not for unbelievers, but only for those who have been called by God and love God. What a comfort this promise is to a Christian! For more on this subject, see the Appendix at the end of this booklet.

a) **Sometimes the answer is "NOT YET."** Sometimes God wants us to be patient and wait for the thing we have requested. A verse which helps us trust God’s timing is Psalm 37:4, 7: “Delight yourself in the LORD and He will give you the desires of your heart...Be still before the LORD and wait patiently for Him.”

b) **Sometimes the answer is "YES."** When God says “yes” to our request, we need to recognize His answer to our prayer, and to give Him the thanks and glory for what He has done. James 1:17 says: “Every good and perfect gift is from above...” What is a prayer request of yours that God has answered with “No” or “Not yet” (either in the past or currently)?

---

**E. Avoid Meaningless Repetition In Your Prayers**

Imagine having a conversation with a friend who just kept repeating something he had memorized, or kept telling you exactly the same thing over and over. That conversation would not really be meaningful to you, would it? We want our friends to talk to us in a personal way, a real conversation of their thoughts and feelings. In the same way, God wants our prayers to be a real conversation with Him, not just phrases we repeat over and over.

Read Jesus’ words in Matt. 6:7 — “*And when you pray, do not heap up empty phrases as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard for their many words.*

What does Jesus say here about meaningless repetition? ________________

Is it pleasing to God when all of your prayers sound the same?

When you pray, be sure that your prayers are genuine. Tell God your own thoughts and feelings, not simply some standard words you are repeating.

**F. What Does It Mean To Pray In Jesus Name?**

Some Christians wrongly believe that if you end your prayer with the words “In Jesus name” (see John
14:13), God is required to do whatever we ask. The Bible teaches us that to pray in the name of Jesus means that we are praying in the authority of Christ. For example, when a policeman says, “Stop in the name of the law!” he is invoking the authority that the law has. Likewise, when we pray in Jesus’ name, we are invoking the authority that Christ Himself has. To pray in Christ’s name means that we identify with the purpose of Christ to the extent that our will is submitted to the will of God (see 1 John 5:14). We must remind ourselves that God will only say “Yes” to those prayers that are in line with His will (see James 4:3). Those who do not obtain what they specifically request are often surprised by a different but better answer. And “No” is sometimes the best answer. We must remember that God answers our prayers according to what He sees as our needs.

**Assignment:** Schedule a time to meet somewhere quiet where the two of you can pray. Have no agenda other than to pray. Be sure to include the four elements of Prayer: Adoration, Confession, Thanksgiving and Supplication.

Date/Time: __________________________ Location: __________________________

A suggested way to pray is “conversational” prayer, in which each person prays briefly about the prayer request, taking turns with each other until the request is thoroughly covered. For example, if two men are praying, the first might pray, “Father, I pray for the conversion of my friend, that he might receive Jesus Christ.” And then the other might pray, “Yes, Lord. I agree with this prayer and ask you to show us how we can approach our friend with the Gospel.” The two men will each pray several times back and forth about the subject of their friend’s salvation before moving on to the next issue of prayer.

Another good way to pray is to pray through a Psalm. Choose a Psalm and personalize the words, making it your own prayer to God. (Example: for confession of sin, Psalm 51 is a very good psalm to pray to God. For praise and adoration, Psalm 145 is excellent.)

As you spend time in prayer together, be sure to pray for yourselves that you would walk in obedience to God. Pray for your family. As time permits, pray for your church leaders, community and family leaders, the leaders of your nation, missionaries you know, and world issues.
Assignment for chapter 6 – Week 1

How Can I be a Witness to Others?

NOTE: THIS CHAPTER SHOULD BE DONE IN TWO SECTIONS, OVER THE COURSE OF TWO WEEKS.

Week One

_____ Study and complete the material for chapter 6.

_____ Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 6 with the person who is discipling you.

_____ Memorize Matthew 28:18-20, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.

_____ Write out your personal testimony, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.

_____ Mark the verses for “Roman’s Road” in your Bible.

_____ Schedule an appointment to go with the person who is discipling you to witness to someone who is not a Christian.

_____ Review the memory verses from previous weeks, and review the names of the books of the New Testament.

☐ John 3:16-17 “For God so loved…”
☐ 1 John 5:12-13 “He who has the Son…”
☐ Exodus 15:11 “Who among the Gods…”
☐ Psalm 119:9-11 “How can a young man…”
☐ 1 John 5:14 “This is the confidence…”
☐ Mathew 28:18-20 “Then Jesus came to them…”

OPENING CONVERSATION FOR LESSON 6: Are you a story teller? Most of us have stories we like to tell. What is yours? Could you tell it to someone from another culture so that it would be understandable?
Assignment for chapter 6 – Week 2

How Can I be a Witness to Others?

Week Two

_______ If the person who is discipling you has suggested any changes in the way you present your personal testimony, re-write your testimony to include those changes.

_______ Tell your testimony again to the person who is discipling you, pretending that he/she is not a Christian.

_______ Present the gospel to the person who is discipling you, pretending that he/she is not a Christian. Use the “Roman’s Road” method to present the gospel.

_______ Tell your testimony to three Christian friends and two non-Christian friends.

_______ Go on two evangelistic visits with the person who is discipling you to two unbelievers. Write the results of your visits on page 57.

_______ Review the memory verses from previous weeks, and review the names of the books of the New Testament.

☐ John 3:16-17 “For God so loved…”
☐ 1 John 5:12-13 “He who has the Son…”
☐ Exodus 15:11 “Who among the Gods…”
☐ Psalm 119:9-11 “How can a young man…”
☐ 1 John 5:14 “This is the confidence…”
☐ Mathew 28:18-20 “The Jesus came to them…”
☐ Names of New Testament books
Chapter
6
How Can I be a Witness to Others?

Memorize Matthew 28:18-20 — And Jesus came and said to them, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19 Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.”

(Note to discipler: This lesson is fairly long and has quite a bit of homework for the student, including two evangelistic visits the disciple will do with you. BE SURE TO TAKE TWO WEEKS TO COMPLETE THIS LESSON.)

Why
Witness?
Christ’s first instructions to His new followers were "Come, follow Me, and I will make you fishers of men" (Matthew 4:19). His last instructions on this earth to His disciples were, “And you will be my witnesses . . . to the end of the earth” (Acts 1:8). Christ thus began and ended His ministry with the command to be witnesses!

As Christians, we have experienced God’s grace and forgiveness. We understand that without Jesus people are lost in sin and will never enter heaven. It should be our deep desire to share this message with people around us. Telling others about salvation through Christ is known as “witnessing.” We are witnesses of the power, grace, and love of Jesus.

If a Christian is not a witness in word and deed for Christ, then he is disobedient. Although some Christians are given a special gift of evangelism, it is not only those with the gift of evangelism who are told to be witnesses. Rather, every Christian is commanded to tell others about Jesus.

Why should a Christian be active in witnessing? The basic motive is simply love for Jesus Christ. As servants of Christ, we must not overlook any of His commandments. Obedience is the fruit and proof of our love for Christ -- Jesus said, “If you love me, you will obey what I command” (John 14:15).

Another reason for being an active witness is loving concern for others. To love someone else is to seek and to serve their highest good. Do you truly love others? Do you love your unsaved friends, relatives, neighbors, and acquaintances? If you are not telling them about Jesus, then you are not showing them true love. We cannot claim to love others if we leave them alone to die without Christ.

Why is it important that we present Jesus Christ to people who are lost? Read the following:

a. John 14: 6 — Jesus said to him, “I am the way, and the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.

b. Acts 4: 12 — And there is salvation in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved.”

What Does A Witness Do?
A witness in a courtroom is expected to tell what he knows about a given situation. For example, if someone witnessed an auto accident, he or she might be called into the courtroom to testify. He *shouldn't* say, “Well I'm not a lawyer. I never studied law and so I can't possibly be a witness!” Instead, what he *should* do is testify about what he saw and what he heard regarding the accident. The Apostle John uses those exact words when he writes in 1 John 1:1-3:

\[
That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked at and our hands have touched -- this we proclaim concerning the Word of life. The life appeared; we have seen it and testify to it, and we proclaim to you the eternal life, which was with the Father and has appeared to us. We proclaim to you what we have seen and heard, so that you also may have fellowship with us. And our fellowship is with the Father and with his Son, Jesus Christ.
\]

Thus, every Christian should be able to tell others how they witnessed a change in their life after Jesus Christ became their Lord and Saviour. We don't have to be an expert and know everything before we tell others about Jesus -- we must simply be faithful to tell them what we do know. Read the following verses about people who were witnesses of Jesus and answer the questions:

1. Look up and read John 1:40-42. What was the first thing Andrew did after he met Jesus?

2. Read Peter’s words in Acts 4:20 — “for we cannot but speak of what we have seen and heard.” What did Peter say about speaking of Jesus Christ? Circle the correct answer.
   a. He didn't speak unless asked.
   b. He was compelled (could not resist) to speak.
   c. He found it difficult to speak of such a personal matter.

3. What was Paul to tell people? Read Acts 22:15 — “for you will be a witness for him to everyone of what you have seen and heard.”

4. Read Romans 1:16 and see what Paul said he was not ashamed of. Why did he say this?

**How Should We Witness?**

1. Read the story of the blind man testifying about Jesus after his sight was restored in John 9:1-34. The blind man whom Jesus healed in this passage had little or no theological training, but he could give a simple and effective testimony. What facts did he tell? (John 9:25)

2. Read 1 John 1:3 — *that which we have seen and heard we proclaim also to you, so that you too may have fellowship with us; and indeed your fellowship is with the Father and with his Son Jesus Christ.* In this passage what does John say that he is proclaiming?

3. What was the subject of Paul's witness? Read these passages:
   a. 1 Corinthians 1:23-24 — *but we preach Christ crucified, a stumbling block to Jews and folly to Gentiles, 24 but to those who are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God and the wisdom of God.*
   b. Ephesians 3:8 — *To me, though I am the very least of all the saints, this grace was given, to preach to the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ.*

4. Read Peter’s exhortation to witness in 1 Peter 3:15-16 — *but in your hearts honor Christ the Lord as holy,*
always being prepared to make a defense to anyone who asks you for a reason for the hope that is in you; yet do it with
gentleness and respect, 16 having a good conscience, so that, when you are slandered, those who revile your good behavior in
Christ may be put to shame. Answer the questions below:

a. What two things should come before telling others about Christ?

b. What is the hope that is in you?

c. What should be your attitude when witnessing?

Jesus came to seek and to save the lost. Since He lives within us, we can simply ask Him to give us the
courage to speak for Him. We can also ask Him to help us know the words to say when we witness to
others. Read Matthew 10:19-20 — When they deliver you over, do not be anxious how you are to speak or what you are to
say, for what you are to say will be given to you in that hour. 20 For it is not you who speak, but the Spirit of your Father speaking
through you — and Luke 12:11-12 — And when they bring you before the synagogues and the rulers and the authorities, do
not be anxious about how you should defend yourself or what you should say, 12 for the Holy Spirit will teach you in that very
hour what you ought to say.” Who will help us tell others about Jesus?

It is important that we always pray before and after we witness to someone, asking God to help us know the
words to say and to be at work in the heart of the person with whom we are speaking.

When Should We Witness?
When should we witness to others about Jesus? We should continually be looking for opportunities to tell
others about Christ. Whenever you are alone with a person for a few minutes you should assume that you
are there by divine appointment to share the good news of God’s love and forgiveness. Example: One
woman was asked, “What is it that you do?” The woman answered, “I am a disciple of Jesus Christ cleverly
disguised as a secretary!” Likewise, we should always look for opportunities to tell others about our
relationship with the Lord.

Remember that Satan does not want you to tell others about Jesus. Witnessing about Jesus is an area that
involves a great deal of spiritual warfare. Our enemy will use whatever method he can to keep you from
witnessing to others. He will tell you lies to discourage you from sharing the good news of Jesus. It is
important for us to recognize the lies and discouragement of Satan, so that we can fight against him with
prayer and scripture. Here are some common ways that Satan might try to prevent you from witnessing:

~ He will tell you that people may become angry with you for speaking about Jesus.
   There is no question that this is true -- some people will become angry and reject the words you say.
   But regardless of the response we get from people, we must obey God’s command to be His
   witnesses. We must fear God more than we fear man (read Exodus 1:15-17 for an example of this).

~ He will tell you that you do not know enough (don’t have enough training/ experience) to be a witness.
   Remember the example in John 9 of the blind man who was healed. Although he knew almost
   nothing about Jesus, he told others what Jesus had done. Every Christian can at least tell what Jesus
   has done in his/her life. If a person asks you a question for which you do not have an answer, you
   can tell them that you will find out and give them the answer later.

~ He will tell you that you might destroy your friendship with someone if you talk to them about Jesus.
Remember that if you truly care about and love someone, you **must** tell them about Jesus. Without Jesus, your friend will be lost forever. You must risk your friendship for the sake of their soul, and trust God to handle the situation.

*He will tell you that people are not interested in hearing about Jesus.*
Although it is true that some people may not be interested in hearing the gospel, many people are interested. People all around us are living empty, lonely lives, and are seeking meaning and purpose. Many people are longing to hear about the God who loves them.

*He will tell you that your life is not a good example of a Christian, so you should not witness.*
The idea that we should not witness until we are perfect is a LIE. The truth is that NO Christian is perfect. God wants us to be holy (1 Peter 1:15-16), and we should try to live holy lives, but we will never be perfect in this life. The Apostle Paul struggled with sin in his life (see Rom 7:15). The Apostle Peter denied Christ 3 times, but God still used him as a powerful evangelist. Even if you are struggling with areas of sin in your life, you can tell people about Jesus and tell them how He died for you and for them. You can tell people that you are not perfect, but that you have been forgiven by the blood of Jesus and that you are learning every day how to be a better person.

*He will tell you that your efforts at witnessing will not be successful -- that the people you talk to will not believe.*
You should not feel discouraged when some refuse to receive Jesus as their Saviour and Lord. It is not your responsibility to make someone believe in Jesus. That is God’s responsibility. Your responsibility is simply to tell them the good news with love and genuine concern.

What is a way (or ways) that Satan often discourages YOU from witnessing? ____________________________

What is a verse that can help you when Satan discourages you in this way? ____________________________

**How Should We Present Jesus Christ?**
How should we present Christ to those who don’t know Him? To answer this question, let us look at the way Paul told others about how he met Christ. Read Paul’s testimony to King Agrippa and the Roman governor in Acts 26:1-23. You will notice in Paul’s story of how he met Christ (his testimony), he included the following:

- What life was like **before** he met Christ (Acts 26:1-11).
- What life was like **after** he met Christ - how it changed his life (Acts 26:19-23).

Using these three points, write out your own brief (no more than three-minutes) testimony below:

What my life was like **before** I received Jesus Christ. I lived and thought this way: ____________________________

What my life was like **after** I received Jesus Christ. I live and think this way: ____________________________

What my life is like **now** I have Christ. I live and think this way: ____________________________
How I received Christ (be specific and use at least one Bible verse): __________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________

After I received Christ, these positive changes took place: __________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________

When you are presenting Christ to someone, it is a good idea to start by giving your own testimony. Practice telling your testimony as you have outlined it above, until you can tell it smoothly and without hesitation. This week, tell your brief testimony to others at least 5 times. Start by telling it to three Christian friends. Then tell your testimony to two non-Christian friends. To whom will you tell your testimony?

The names of three Christian friends: __________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________

The names of two non-Christian friends: __________________________
__________________________________________________________
__________________________________________________________

**Explain God’s Way of Salvation**

After telling someone how you met Christ, it is important that you explain to them their own need for Jesus. You should use verses from the Bible to support what you are saying. One good method of explaining the gospel is called the **“Romans Road”**, and uses seven verses from Romans:

1) Romans 3:10  2) Romans 3:23  3) Romans 5:12  4) Romans 5:8
5) Romans 6:23  6) Romans 10:13  7) Romans 10:9-10

So that you always remember where to begin, write “ROMANS ROAD BEGINS AT ROMANS 3:10” in the front of your Bible. Then turn to Romans 3:10 and have the person to whom you are witnessing read the verse. It may help him if you have the verse underlined in your Bible. On that same page that you have Romans 3:10 in your Bible, write the words “GO TO ROMANS 3:23.” Again, have your friend read Romans 3:23 out loud. Ask him, “What has destroyed our relationship with God?”

On that same page that you have Rom. 3:23, write the words “GO TO ROMANS 5:12.” Have your friend
read Rom 5:12. Then say, “Those three verses clearly say that everyone is a sinner. No one is righteous. We are separated from God because of our sin.” It may be helpful to show your friend an illustration of how we are separated from God:

![Illustration of Sinful Man and Holy God]

The arrows show man’s attempt to reach God by good works, religion, etc. All of these attempts fall short. On that same page that you have Rom. 5:12, write the words “GO TO ROMANS 5:8.” Have your friend read Rom. 5:8.

Explain to your friend that Jesus is 100% man and 100% God, and tell them that He died on the cross for our sins so that we can be forgiven and have a relationship with God. He is the only one who can bridge the gap between a Holy God and sinful man. The following illustration shows how Jesus brings us to God:

![Illustration of Sinful Man, Christ, and Holy God]

On that same page that you have Rom. 5:8, write the words “GO TO ROMANS 6:23.” Have your friend read Rom. 6:23. Explain to your friend that sin leads to spiritual death and judgment, but if we receive Jesus we will be saved. Explain that eternal life is a gift and that it cannot be earned by doing good works. We can only enter heaven through Jesus Christ our Lord. (You could have your friend read Ephesians 2:9-10 if they do not understand that salvation is simply a gift because of God’s grace -- not because of anything we do ourselves.)

Be sure to emphasize that conversion involves two key elements: repentance and faith. Jesus said in Mark 1:15, “Repent and believe the gospel” (see also Luke 13:2-5). To repent means to make a spiritual U-turn. We turn away from sin and turn in faith towards the cross. On that same page that you have Rom 6:23, write the words “GO TO ROMANS 10:13.” Have your friend read Rom 10:13.

On that same page that you have Romans 10:13 in your Bible, write the words “GO TO ROMANS 10:9-10.” Have your friend read Romans 10:9-10. You may also have your friend read John 1:12. Tell your friend that receiving eternal life and having a relationship with God is simply a matter of admitting that they are a sinner, believing the words of the Bible and asking Jesus into their life. Ask your friend, “Is there any reason you can think of why you would not want to receive Jesus Christ right now?” If your friend indicates that they would like to receive Jesus, you can help them ask Jesus into their life by praying with them a simple prayer like this (they can repeat the words after you):

"Oh Jesus, I realize that I am a sinner. I have done many things wrong that displease you. I now repent of my sins, in other words, I now make a spiritual U-turn from my sins and I turn to the cross of Jesus Christ. I now accept your blood atonement for my sin. Thank you for dying on the cross for my sins and for allowing me to have a relationship with you. Please come into my heart, and take control of my life. I want to obey you and follow you. In Jesus’ name I pray, Amen.”

There is nothing in life quite as exciting as praying that prayer with someone! After you lead someone to
Christ, it is important that you tell them that they must now follow Christ and live their lives according to the guidelines of the Bible. Make sure they have the opportunity to grow in their understanding of God and the Bible. If you are unable to spend regular time with them yourself, introduce them to another Christian who can help them grow. Also try to get them established in a good church that can help them to mature as a Christian.

**Helpful Suggestions When Witnessing To Someone**

1) Learn how to turn the topic of a conversation around so that you can talk about Jesus. Practice doing this with the person who is discipling you. As one man said when asked, “What is it that you do?” energetically answered, “I am a disciple of Jesus Christ cleverly disguised as a farmer!”

2) Keep the conversation focused on Jesus Christ. Many times people will have questions or comments on subjects that are not directly related to Jesus. It is important that you continue to direct the conversation back to Jesus.

3) If you are asked a question that you don’t know the answer to, don’t “fake it.” Simply say you don’t know, then seek the counsel of another Christian who can guide you to the correct answer.

**Being a Fruitful Witness**

The following chart can help you remember the basic steps to being a faithful and fruitful witness for Christ. Review each step with the person who is discipling you.

![Fruitful Witness Diagram]

As we close this chapter on evangelism, it is wise to remember the words of St. Augustine who said:

“*Without God, we cannot (convert anyone); without us, God will not.*”

Will you be that faithful person whom God uses to share your testimony and the gospel? Yes [ ] No [ ]
Homework:
1) Think of two people you know who are not Christians, and pray that they will become believers. Try to arrange an opportunity to witness to them.

2) Prepare your testimony and present it to the person who is discipling you. Also present Romans Road to your discipler.

3) Make two visits with your discipler and give your testimony to two unbelievers. Also present the gospel to them using Romans Road if possible. After your evangelistic visits, write the answers to the following questions:

a.) What are the names of the people to whom you presented the gospel?

b.) What was their response to your testimony?

c.) What was their response to the gospel presentation?

d.) What did you learn from this experience?
Assignment for chapter 7

What is my Relationship to Others in the Church?

NOTE: Do not go on to chapter 8 until you have completed and checked each of the following assignments:

_______ Study and complete the material for chapter 7.

_______ Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 7 with the person who is discipling you.

_______ Memorize Colossians 3:12-14, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.

_______ Memorize the names of the first 14 books of the Old Testament (Genesis through 2 Chronicles), and tell them to the person who is discipling you.

_______ Make an appointment to go with the person who is discipling you to serve someone in your church (see page 58).

_______ Review the memory verses from previous weeks, and review the names of the books of the New Testament.

☐ John 3:16-17 “For God so loved…”
☐ 1 John 5:12-13 “He who has the Son…”
☐ Exodus 15:11 “Who among the Gods…”
☐ Psalm 119:9-11 “How can a young man…”
☐ 1 John 5:14 “This is the confidence…”
☐ Mathew 28:18-20 “Then Jesus came to them…”
☐ Colossians 3:12-14 Therefore, as God’s chosen people…”

OPENING CONVERSATION FOR LESSON 7: When you were a child, who was one of your closest friends? What made that person so special to you?
Assignment for chapter 7

What is my Relationship to Others in the Church?

NOTE: Do not go on to chapter 8 until you have completed and checked each of the following assignments:

_____ Study and complete the material for chapter 7.
_____ Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 7 with the person who is discipling you.
_____ Memorize Colossians 3:12-14, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.
_____ Memorize the names of the first 14 books of the Old Testament (Genesis through 2 Chronicles), and tell them to the person who is discipling you.
_____ Make an appointment to go with the person who is discipling you to serve someone in your church (see page 11)
_____ Review the memory verses from previous weeks, and review the names of the books of the New Testament.

☐ John 3:16-17. 16 “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life. 17 For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the world might be saved through him.

☐ 1 John 5:12-13. 12 Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life. 13 I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God that you may know that you have eternal life.

☐ Exodus 15:11. 11 “Who is like you, O LORD, among the gods? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, awesome in glorious deeds, doing wonders

☐ Psalm 119:9-11. 9 How can a young man keep his way pure? By guarding it according to your word. 10 With my whole heart I seek you; let me not wander from your commandments! 11 I have stored up your word in my heart, that I might not sin against you.

☐ 1 John 5:14. 14 And this is the confidence that we have toward him, that if we ask anything according to his will he hears us.

☐ Matthew 28:18-20. 18 And Jesus came and said to them, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19 Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.”

☐ Colossians 3:12-14. 12 Put on then, as God’s chosen ones, holy and beloved, compassionate hearts, kindness, humility, meekness, and patience, 13 bearing with one another and, if one has a complaint against another, forgiving each other; as the Lord has forgiven you, so you also must forgive. 14 And above all these put on love, which binds everything together in perfect harmony.

OPENING ICEBREAKER TO LESSON 7: When you were a child, who was one of your closest friends? What made that person so special to you?
Part Three: My Relationship to the Church

Chapter 7

What is my Relationship to Others in the Church?

Memorize Colossians 3:12-14

Colossians 3:12-14. "Put on then, as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved, compassionate hearts, kindness, humility, meekness, and patience, bearing with one another and, if one has a complaint against another, forgiving each other; as the Lord has forgiven you, so you also must forgive. And above all these put on love, which binds everything together in perfect harmony.

As children of God, we have the privilege of being a part of God's family. This family includes all the people throughout the world who have Christ as their Lord and Savior. This family is called the "Body of Christ" or the "Church". Christ Himself is the Head of the body, and we are all members of the body.

God desires that every believer be a functioning member of a local church. We cannot grow to maturity all by ourselves -- God's plan is that we will mature as we remain in regular fellowship with Him and with other Christians.

A. Christians Are Members Of One Another

The New Testament states that Christians are "members of one another." Read 1 Corinthians 12: 14-27: "For the body does not consist of one member but of many. If the foot should say, "Because I am not a hand, I do not belong to the body," that would not make it any less a part of the body. And if the ear should say, "Because I am not an eye, I do not belong to the body," that would not make it any less a part of the body. If the whole body were an eye, where would be the sense of hearing? If the whole body were an ear, where would be the sense of smell? But as it is, God arranged the members in the body, each one of them, as he chose. If all were a single member, where would the body be? As it is, there are many parts, yet one body. The eye cannot say to the hand, "I have no need of you," nor again the head to the feet, "I have no need of you." On the contrary, the parts of the body that seem to be weaker are indispensable, and on those parts of the body that we think less honorable we bestow the greater honor, and our unpresentable parts are treated with greater modesty, which our more presentable parts do not require. But God has so composed the body, giving greater honor to the part that lacked it, that there may be no division in the body, but that the members may have the same care for one another. If one member suffers, all suffer together; if one member is honored, all rejoice together. Now you are the body of Christ and individually members of it.

Now write what example Paul uses to illustrate the idea that we are all members of one another: __________

Write Romans 12:5 ("so we, though many, are one body in Christ, and individually members one of another.")

One of the most important things in the Christian life is showing love to others. In John 13:35 Jesus said "By this all people will know that you are my disciples, if you have love for one another." How are you in this area? Can the people around you see that you are a Christ-follower by watching the way you treat others?

How are we to treat others? In the New Testament, the "one another" commandments appear 59 times. Each time, God gives you a command (not a suggestion) to do a particular action to "one another." Read the following verses and CIRCLE the "one another" commandment that is given:
• Mark 9:50. "Salt is good, but if the salt has lost its saltiness, how will you make it salty again? Have salt in yourselves, and be at peace with one another.”

• John 13:14. "If I then, your Lord and Teacher, have washed your feet, you also ought to wash one another's feet.

• John 13:34. "A new commandment I give to you, that you love one another: just as I have loved you, you also are to love one another.

• Romans 15:7. "Therefore welcome one another as Christ has welcomed you, for the glory of God.

• Romans 15:14. "I myself am satisfied about you, my brothers, that you yourselves are full of goodness, filled with all knowledge and able to instruct one another.

• Galatians 6:2. "Bear one another's burdens, and so fulfill the law of Christ.

• Ephesians 5:21 submitting to one another out of reverence for Christ.

• Philippians 2:3 "Do nothing from selfish ambition or conceit, but in humility count others more significant than yourselves.

• Colossians 3:9. "Do not lie to one another, seeing that you have put off the old self with its practices.

• Colossians 3:13. "bearing with one another and, if one has a complaint against another, forgiving each other, as the Lord has forgiven you, so you also must forgive.

• Colossians 3:16. "Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly, teaching and admonishing one another in all wisdom, singing psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, with thankfulness in your hearts to God.

• 1 Thess. 5:11. "Therefore encourage one another and build one another up, just as you are doing.

• James 4:11 "Do not speak evil against one another, brothers. The one who speaks against a brother or judges his brother, speaks evil against the law and judges the law. But if you judge the law, you are not a doer of the law but a judge.

• James 5:16. "Therefore, confess your sins to one another and pray for one another, that you may be healed. The prayer of a righteous person has great power as it is working.

• 1 Peter 4:9. "Show hospitality to one another without grumbling.

• 1 Peter 4:10. "As each has received a gift, use it to serve one another, as good stewards of God's varied grace:

B. How Should We Treat One Another?

Let's study a few of these "one another" commandments more closely:

1) Encourage one another

Read 1 Thess. 5:11. “Therefore encourage one another and build each other up, just as in fact you are doing.” Christians are to build up, strengthen, and encourage one another. No one pastor can build up every single person in the church. God's design is that we all build each other up.

We must recognize the importance of the Word of God in encouraging and building each other up (1 Thess. 4:18 says, "Therefore encourage one another with these words."). We should be ready to share scriptures with others who are in special need of encouragement. In order to encourage others with scripture, we must study the Word of God on a regular basis -- not only for our own growth, but also to assist others in their growth.

Read Hebrews 10:24-25. "And let us consider how to stir up one another to love and good works, not neglecting to meet together, as is the habit of some, but encouraging one another, and all the more as you see
the Day drawing near.

What should we encourage others (urge others to do)? ______________________________________

What is one important way we encourage others (verse 25) (What should we not give up doing?) ______

Thus, it is important to meet together for worship and fellowship on a frequent basis. No individual Christian can function effectively all alone. For example imagine a log fire.

The logs that are together are all glowing brightly. But put one piece of wood off to the side and it quickly burns out. Likewise, we must be with other Christians in fellowship in order to "burn" brightly for the Lord Jesus Christ and have our Christianity be "hot." We all need the encouragement of meeting together on a regular basis in order to remain strong in our Christian lives. This is why regular attendance and involvement in a church is vital.

Another reason why it is important to be in close fellowship with other Christians is that we are less vulnerable to the attacks of Satan when we are with other believers. An example of this principle can be found in Africa. If a herd of gazelles all stick together, the lion will not attack any one of them. However, if one leaves the herd, the lion will eat that gazelle for dinner. Likewise, the Bible tells us that "your enemy the devil prowls around like a roaring lion looking for someone to devour" (1 Peter 5:8). If one of us wanders away from the fellowship of other believers, we are more likely to be devoured, but if we all stick together we are much less vulnerable to our enemy.

2) Be devoted to one another, honor one another above yourselves

Romans 12:10 tells us to, "Be devoted to one another in brotherly love. Honor one another above yourselves." This command can often be hard to obey, because our natural tendency is to think of ourselves before thinking of anyone else, and to be devoted to our own needs and wants. But God is very clear about how He wants us to behave. Read Philippians 2: 3-11, 3 Do nothing from selfish ambition or conceit, but in humility count others more significant than yourselves. 4 Let each of you look not only to his own interests, but also to the interests of others. 5 Have this mind among yourselves, which is yours in Christ Jesus, 6 who, though he was in the form of God, did not count equality with God a thing to be grasped, 7 but emptied himself, by taking the form of a servant, being born in the likeness of men. 8 And being found in human form, he humbled himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross. 9 Therefore God has highly exalted him and bestowed on him the name that is above every name, 10 so that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, in heaven and on earth and under the earth, 11 and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father. After reading the passage, answer the following questions:

What should we not do? (verse 3) ______________________________________

How should we view the interests of others? (verses 3-4) ______________________________________

Whose attitude should we copy? (verse 5) ______________________________________
What did Jesus do to place the needs of others above Himself? (verses 7-8)

We must take seriously what the Bible says about being devoted to and honoring one another. Evaluate your attitudes and actions toward fellow Christians:

Do I spend most of my time thinking about myself rather than others?
   a. Do I spend time praying for myself or others?
   b. Am I forgiving toward others? Or am I basically angry and resentful?
   c. When I am hurt, do I withdraw or do I continue to be involved with other people?
   d. Do I fear rejection, or do I reach out to others? How do I show others my love and interest in them?
   e. Do I humbly consider the interests of others before my own interests?

3) Admonish one another

The Greek word for "admonish" means to "warn and instruct." Some have said that to admonish means to "compassionately confront" someone. An example of this may be, "Tom, I love you as a friend and your best interest is my concern. The Bible is very clear that you must turn away from your sin of stealing your neighbor's cattle and return to your neighbors the cattle you have stolen. If you repent and obey, God promises to forgive you and will begin to put the pieces back together again. And I care about you too much to see you destroy your life with this sin."

To confront a Christian about their sin is a difficult thing to do. Nevertheless, part of our responsibility in our relationships with other Christians is to love them enough to be willing to speak to them about areas of sin in their lives. Proverbs 27:6 says, "Faithful are the wounds of a friend; but deceitful are the kisses of an enemy." A true friend will be painfully honest when it comes to sin. Admonishing one another is not simply a suggestion -- rather, we are commanded to do this, and we are told to do it in the spirit of love. As Paul says, we must strive to "speak the truth in love" (Ephesians 4:15).

The Bible gives us instructions about the way we should admonish a fellow believer. Read the following verses and answer the questions:

   a. Read 1 Corinthians 4:14, "I do not write these things to make you ashamed, but to admonish you as my beloved children." What is to be the motive for admonishing someone? Also, what should NOT be a motive?  

   b. Read Matthew 7: 2-5. For with the judgment you pronounce you will be judged, and with the measure you use it will be measured to you. Why do you see the speck that is in your brother's eye, but do not notice the log that is in your own eye? Or how can you say to your brother, 'Let me take the speck out of your eye,' when there is the log in your own eye? You hypocrite, first take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take the speck out of your brother's eye.

What must we evaluate in ourselves before we admonish someone?  

   c. Read Galatians 6:1, "Brothers, if anyone is caught in any transgression, you who are spiritual should restore him in a spirit of gentleness. Keep watch on yourself, lest you too be tempted." Now read Acts 20:3, "Therefore be alert, remembering that for three years I did not cease night or day to admonish every one with tears."

What is the way in which we should admonish someone?
d. Read Matthew 18:15-17. 

15 If your brother sins against you, go and tell him his fault, between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have gained your brother. 

16 But if he does not listen, take one or two others along with you, that every charge may be established by the evidence of two or three witnesses. 

17 If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church. And if he refuses to listen even to the church, let him be to you as a Gentile and a tax collector.

What steps should be taken in the process of admonishing someone? __________________________________________________________

Note that the first step spoken of in Matthew 18:15 is to admonish another believer "just between the two of you." In other words, we are to admonish each other privately. A good principle to remember is to praise people in public and admonish them in private.

When we are admonished by someone else, we should take care to have the proper attitude. It is often difficult not to become angry or defensive when someone corrects us, but we must learn to listen carefully to the correction in order to hear what God might be wanting to say to us through the person who is admonishing us (even if they are not admonishing us in the best way.)

Read Proverbs 9: 8-9. 

8 Do not reprove a scoffer, or he will hate you; reprove a wise man, and he will love you. 

9 Give instruction to a wise man, and he will be still wiser; teach a righteous man, and he will increase in learning. Now read Proverbs 12:1. “Whoever loves discipline loves knowledge, but he who hates reproof is stupid.”

What do these two verses tell us about the right attitude towards correction? __________________________________________________________

4) Accept one another

Romans 15:7 tells us to, "Accept one another, then, just as Christ accepted you, in order to bring praise to God." Accepting one another brings praise to God because it shows the world around us that relationships in the Christian family are based on love and acceptance of each other, despite our differences.

Read John 13:35, “By this all people will know that you are my disciples, if you have love for one another”

What did Jesus say in the verse would show all men that we are His disciples? __________________________________________________________

If we love someone, we will accept them without being critical or judgmental. Read the following verses and answer the questions:

What are we told to do in Romans 14:1? (Romans 14:1. “As for the one who is weak in faith, welcome him, but not to quarrel over opinions”) __________________________________________________________

Notice that the verse says not to pass judgment on "disputable matters" or opinions. Areas that are not specified as sin should not become a source of disagreement and judgment among Christian brothers and sisters. Read Romans 14: 3, “Let not the one who eats despise the one who abstains, and let not the one who
abstains pass judgment on the one who eats, for God has welcomed him.” How are we to handle differences in areas that are not clearly sin? 

When the world sees division and arguments among God's people, they cannot understand the love of God. 1 Corinthians 1:10 says, “I appeal to you, brothers, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that all of you agree, and that there be no divisions among you, but that you be united in the same mind and the same judgment.” Let us accept one another and not allow divisions among us.

Accepting others also means that we should not show partiality by treating some people better than others. Read Romans 12:16, “Live in harmony with one another. Do not be haughty, but associate with the lowly. Never be wise in your own sight.” (Haughty means to act as if we are more important than others.) In Romans 12:16, how are we told to act? 

The Lord is grieved when He sees Christians arguing with each other and not accepting each other. Read Galatians 3:28, “There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is no male and female, for you are all one in Christ Jesus.” What does this verse tell us about divisions among the people of God?

When we judge others in areas that should not divide us or where we treat certain people better than others, we are not accepting each other. Are there people in your life whom you have not been accepting? If so, ask God to forgive you and to help you to show true acceptance of your Christian brothers and sisters, so that you can "bring praise to God."

5) Bear with one another; forgive one another

Colossians 3:13 tells us, “Bear with each other and forgive whatever grievances you may have against one another. Forgive as the Lord forgave you.” Bearing with each other means to be patient and tolerant toward the habits and weaknesses of others, and to forgive whatever grievances you may have against one another.

It is often hard to be patient with other people. Our tendency is to be angry and irritable with what we see as the shortcomings of another person. When we are tempted to be impatient with one another, we need to think about God's attitude toward us.

Read Nehemiah 9:16-17. 16 But they and our fathers acted presumptuously and stiffened their neck and did not obey your commandments. 17 They refused to obey and were not mindful of the wonders that you performed among them, but they stiffened their neck and appointed a leader to return to their slavery in Egypt. But you are a God ready to forgive, gracious and merciful, slow to anger and abounding in steadfast love, and did not forsake them. What do these verses tell us about God's attitude about us? 

Not only must we be patient, we must also be quick to forgive others when someone sins against us. Sadly, some Christians remain bitter for many years toward a person who has hurt them. This is nothing less than sin, and causes harm to us spiritually and emotionally. We must make a deliberate decision to forgive those who do things that hurt us. Romans 12:18 says, “If possible, so far as it depends on you, live peaceably with all.” This means that even if the other person is in the wrong, we must forgive them and do all we can to live
at peace with them. We cannot be responsible for another person's sinful behavior, but we can make certain that our response to their behavior is Christ-like.

What does Matthew 18:21-22 say about how often we are to forgive? (Matthew 18:21-22) Then Peter came up and said to him, “Lord, how often will my brother sin against me, and I forgive him? As many as seven times?” Jesus said to him, “I do not say to you seven times, but seventy-seven times.”

What about when someone is angry with us? What is our responsibility in that situation? (Read Matthew 5: 23-24. So if you are offering your gift at the altar and there remember that your brother has something against you, leave your gift there before the altar and go. First be reconciled to your brother, and then come and offer your gift.)

The Bible tells us that we must "seek peace and pursue it" (found in both 1 Peter 3:11 and Romans 14:19). That means we need to do everything on our part to be at peace with the other person, even when we believe that the conflict is the other person's fault. We must humbly approach the other person and leave the response to God. God is primarily concerned with your obedience to the command "seek peace and pursue it" as this is how you develop Christ-like character.

Read John 17:21. that they may all be one, just as you, Father, are in me, and I in you, that they also may be in us, so that the world may believe that you have sent me. What did Jesus pray for regarding our unity?

Maintaining the "bond of peace" (Ephesians 4:3, “eager to maintain the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace.”) demonstrates to the world that we have unity through the Spirit of God. Are you showing the world the unity of the Spirit of God, or are there people in your life with whom you are not at peace? Is there someone whom you feel bitter towards, or who is angry with you? Think about who you might need to reconcile (make peace) with, and write their names below:

This week forgive the person (or people) you have named, or ask them to forgive you. Make a plan now to contact them and be reconciled to them. What is your plan?

6) Serve one another
In Galatians 5:13 we are commanded to "serve one another." Jesus was a living example of Christian servitude as he "took on the very nature of a servant" (Philippians 2:7). Jesus did not only serve in ways that were easy or convenient -- He served when He was tired and weary, He served when people did not show gratitude, He served in ways that many would consider shameful or demeaning (for example, washing the disciples' feet).

Galatians 5:13, “For you were called to freedom, brothers. Only do not use your freedom as an opportunity for the flesh, but through love serve one another.”

Philippians 2:7, “but emptied himself, by taking the form of a servant, being born in the likeness of men.”

Jesus' teaching on serving others was contrary to what the world teaches. Read Mark 10:41-46: And when the ten heard it, they began to be indignant at James and John. And Jesus called them to him and said to them, “You know that those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them, and their great ones exercise authority over them. But it shall not be so among you. But whoever would be great among you must be your servant, and whoever would be
first among you must be slave of all. 45 For even the Son of Man came not to be served but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many.” 46 And they came to Jericho. And as he was leaving Jericho with his disciples and a great crowd, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar, the son of Timaeus, was sitting by the roadside. Now answer the following questions:

Look again at verses 42-44. How did the teachings of Jesus on greatness differ from the world's idea?

What did Jesus say was the purpose of His coming? (verse 45)

Jesus wants us to follow His example in serving one another. He wants us to not only serve when it is easy or convenient, but also when it is difficult or inconvenient. We should not only serve by doing the things we enjoy, but we should also be willing to do the things we don't enjoy. We should serve not only when we will receive praise for our service, but also when our service will go unnoticed. And we should serve cheerfully, without grumbling or complaining. (Philippians 2:14 “Do all things without grumbling or disputing.”) We must remember that "whatever you do, work at it with all your heart, as working for the Lord, and not for men...it is the Lord Christ you are serving." (Colossians 3:23)

C. Where Do You Need To Improve?

We have seen the importance of maintaining fellowship with other Christians by obeying the "one another" commandments in the Bible. When we do this, we fulfill the request of Jesus who prayed in John 17: 20-23 I do not ask for these only, but also for those who will believe in me through their word, 21 that they may all be one, just as you, Father, are in me, and I in you, that they also may be in us, so that the world may believe that you have sent me. 22 The glory that you have given me I have given to them, that they may be one even as we are one, 23 I in them and you in me, that they may become perfectly one, so that the world may know that you sent me and loved them even as you loved me.

Which "one another" commandment is the Holy Spirit convincing you of right now?

What are some practical things you can do to improve in that area?

Spend some time with the person that is discipling you in prayer. Pray that you will demonstrate the love of God by fulfilling the "one another" commandments and maintaining true fellowship with other believers.

Assignment: Choose someone in your church whom you and your discipler can serve. Some examples of service may include:

a) Bring a meal to someone who is sick.

b) Visit an elderly person and comfort them in some way.

c) Look after the children of someone in your church.

d) Write a letter of encouragement to an elder or deacon in your church.
e) Ask your church elders if there is some way that you can serve your church.

Our plan to serve someone in the next week or two is: ________________________________
______________________________________________________________________________
______________________________________________________________________________
______________________________________________________________________________
______________________________________________________________________________
Assignment for chapter 8

Who is the Holy Spirit, and what Spiritual Gifts does He give?

NOTE: Do not go on to chapter 9 until you have completed and checked each of the following assignments:

____ Study and complete the material for chapter 8.
____ Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 8 with the person who is discipling you.
____ Review with your discipler the list of spiritual gifts, and try to determine what your spiritual gift (or gifts) might be and how you can use your gift (or gifts) to strengthen your church.
____ Memorize Galatians 5: 22-23, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.
____ Memorize the names of the next 12 books of the Old Testament (Ezra through Ezekiel), and tell them to the person who is discipling you.

EXTRA REVIEW: Review with the person who is discipling you how you are doing in the various areas of Christian discipline that you have studied so far (prayer, Bible study, relationships with others, etc.)

____ Review the memory verses from previous weeks, and review the names of the books of the New Testament and Old Testament.

☐ John 3:16-17. “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life. 17 For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the world might be saved through him.

☐ 1 John 5:12-13. Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life. 13 I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God that you may know that you have eternal life.

☐ Exodus 15:11. “Who is like you, O LORD, among the gods? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, awesome in glorious deeds, doing wonders

☐ Psalm 119:9-11. How can a young man keep his way pure? By guarding it according to your word. 10 With my whole heart I seek you; let me not wander from your commandments! 11 I have stored up your word in my heart, that I might not sin against you.

☐ 1 John 5:14. And this is the confidence that we have toward him, that if we ask anything according to his will he hears us.

☐ Mathew 28:18-20. And Jesus came and said to them, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19 Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.”

☐ Colossians 3:12-14. Put on then, as God’s chosen ones, holy and beloved, compassionate hearts, kindness, humility, meekness, and patience, bearing with one another and, if one has a complaint against another, forgiving each other; as the Lord has forgiven you, so you also must forgive. 14 And above all these put on love, which binds everything together in perfect harmony.

☐ Galatians 5: 22-23. But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law.
Chapter 8

Who is the Holy Spirit, and what Spiritual Gifts does He give?

Memorize Galatians 5: 22-23

Galatians 5: 22-23. 22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, 23 gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law.

The Holy Spirit has given every Christian at least one gift which He wants you to share with everybody in the church. Before we talk about the special gift the Holy Spirit has given you, let's first examine some Bible teachings on the Holy Spirit.

A. Who Is The Holy Spirit?

1) The Holy Spirit is a person.

In Scripture, the Holy Spirit is a person in the same sense that God the Father is a person and Jesus Christ is a person. This does not mean a human person, but it means that the Holy Spirit is not simply "wind" or "air" or a "ghost" or a "force". The Holy Spirit is a real individual. Throughout Scripture, the holy Spirit is referred to as "he" (for example, John 15:26; John 16:13-14); and is shown to have personality characteristics (for example He can be lied to, He can be grieved, and so on.)

John 15: 26 But when the Helper comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of truth, who proceeds from the Father, he will bear witness about me.

John 16: 13-14 When the Spirit of truth comes, he will guide you into all the truth, for he will not speak on his own authority, but whatever he hears he will speak, and he will declare to you the things that are to come. 14 He will glorify me, for he will take what is mine and declare it to you.

2) The Holy Spirit is God

a) Read Acts 5: 3-4. 3 But Peter said, “Ananias, why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back for yourself part of the proceeds of the land? 4 While it remained unsold, did it not remain your own? And after it was sold, was it not at your disposal? Why is it that you have contrived this deed in your heart? You have not lied to man but to God.” Who did Peter believe the Holy Spirit to be? ____________

b) His works affirm that He is God (more will be said about this in section B of this chapter).

3) The Holy Spirit is sent to us by the Father (John 14:16) and by Jesus (John 16:7)

- John 14:16. “And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Helper, to be with you forever”
- John 16:7 “Nevertheless, I tell you the truth: it is to your advantage that I go away, for if I do not go away, the Helper will not come to you. But if I go, I will send him to you.”

Jesus calls the Holy Spirit "another Counselor to be with you forever" (John 14:16). Let us look at this important verse more closely.
First, let us examine the word "another". There are two words for "another" in Greek -- "heteros" and "allos". "Heteros" means "another of a different quality". "Allos" means "another of equal quality". The word used here in the Gospel of John is "allos" which indicates that the Holy Spirit was of equal quality to Jesus.

Now let us look at the word "Counselor", which in the original Greek is the word "parakletos". Parakletos refers to one who has been called on to provide help by comforting, advising, advocating (or speaking in favor of), empowering, assuring, guiding, etc. Jesus was telling His disciples that God the Father would send the Holy Spirit to help believers in many different ways.

B. What Does The Holy Spirit Do?

All throughout the Bible we can see the various works of the Holy Spirit. Some of these are listed below. Please read the scriptures.

1. The Holy Spirit participated in the creation of the world.
   - Genesis 1:1-2. In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth. The earth was without form and void, and darkness was over the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters.
   - Psalm 33:6. By the word of the LORD the heavens were made, and by the breath of his mouth all their host.
   - Psalm 104:30. When you send forth your Spirit, they are created, and you renew the face of the ground
   - Job 33:4. The Spirit of God has made me, and the breath of the Almighty gives me life.

2. The Holy Spirit moved in men in order that the Word of God would be written. (see lesson 4 for more detail).
   - 2 Peter 1:21 For no prophecy was ever produced by the will of man, but men spoke from God as they were carried along by the Holy Spirit.
   - Acts 28:25 And disagreeing among themselves, they departed after Paul had made one statement: “The Holy Spirit was right in saying to your fathers through Isaiah the prophet:

3. The Holy Spirit was involved in the life of Jesus, who was conceived by the Holy Spirit; anointed by the Spirit; filled with the Spirit; led by the Spirit; and empowered by the Spirit. (see lesson 1 for more detail)
   - Luke 1:35 And the angel answered her, “The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you; therefore the child to be born will be called holy—the Son of God.
   - Luke 4:18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he has anointed me to proclaim good news to the poor. He has sent me to proclaim liberty to the captives and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty those who are oppressed,
   - Luke 4:1 And Jesus, full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan and was led by the Spirit in the wilderness
   - Matthew 12:28 But if it is by the Spirit of God that I cast out demons, then the kingdom of God has come upon you.

4. The Holy Spirit is involved with the salvation of people by convicting them of their sins and the truth of the gospel, regenerating (that is, making new again) the hearts of those who receive Christ, indwelling them (living inside all true believers), sealing all believers, which means they have eternal security (see lesson 2 for more detail) assuring believers that they are truly God's children.
John 16:8-11 And when he comes, he will convict the world concerning sin and righteousness and judgment:
9 concerning sin, because they do not believe in me; 10 concerning righteousness, because I go to the Father, and you will see me no longer; 11 concerning judgment, because the ruler of this world is judged.

Titus 3:5 He saved us, not because of works done by us in righteousness, but according to His own mercy, by the washing of regeneration and renewal of the Holy Spirit,

1 Corinthians 6:19 Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit within you, whom you have from God? You are not your own

Ephesians 1:13 In him you also, when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and believed in him, were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit,

Ephesians 4:30 And do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption.

Romans 8: 16 The Spirit himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God

5. The Holy Spirit helps us to pray and also speaks on our behalf (intercession).

Romans 8: 26-27 Likewise the Spirit helps us in our weakness. For we do not know what to pray for as we ought, but the Spirit himself intercedes for us with groanings too deep for words. 27 And he who searches hearts knows what is the mind of the Spirit, because the Spirit intercedes for the saints according to the will of God.

6. The Holy Spirit helps believers to understand what they read in the Bible.

1 Corinthians 2: 10-14 these things God has revealed to us through the Spirit. For the Spirit searches everything, even the depths of God. 11 For who knows a person's thoughts except the spirit of that person, which is in him? So also no one comprehends the thoughts of God except the Spirit of God. 12 Now we have received not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit who is from God, that we might understand the things freely given us by God. 13 And we impart this in words not taught by human wisdom but taught by the Spirit, interpreting spiritual truths to those who are spiritual. 14 The natural person does not accept the things of the Spirit of God, for they are folly to him, and he is not able to understand them because they are spiritually discerned.

John 14:26 But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, he will teach you all things and bring to your remembrance all that I have said to you.

7. The Holy Spirit gives us "the fruit of the Spirit."

Galatians 5:22-23. 22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, 23 gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law.

8. The Holy Spirit gives spiritual gifts to Christians.

1 Corinthians 12:7, “To each is given the manifestation of the Spirit for the common good.”

C. Do I Have A Spiritual Gift?

Let's start by defining the term "spiritual gift". A spiritual gift is a special ability given by the Holy Spirit to enable the Christian to minister and to serve others in the church. The main purpose of spiritual gifts is to build and strengthen the church. Read the verses below and answer the questions:

1. Is every Christian given at least one spiritual gift from the Holy Spirit? Circle YES NO

1 Peter 4:10 As each has received a gift, use it to serve one another, as good stewards of God's varied grace
1 Corinthians 12:7 To each is given the manifestation of the Spirit for the common good.

2. Can one person have ALL of the gifts? Circle YES NO

1 Corinthians 12:7-10. To each is given the manifestation of the Spirit for the common good. For to one is given through the Spirit the utterance of wisdom, and to another the utterance of knowledge according to the same Spirit, to another faith by the same Spirit, to another gifts of healing by the one Spirit, to another the working of miracles, to another prophecy, to another the ability to distinguish between spirits, to another various kinds of tongues, to another the interpretation of tongues.

3. Is there any one gift that is given to everybody? Circle YES NO

1 Corinthians 12:28-30. And God has appointed in the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then miracles, then gifts of healing, helping, administrating, and various kinds of tongues. Are all apostles? Are all prophets? Are all teachers? Do all work miracles? Do all possess gifts of healing? Do all speak with tongues? Do all interpret?

4. Who decides who gets a particular gift? Circle HOLY SPIRIT US

1 Corinthians 12:11, “All these are empowered by one and the same Spirit, who apportions to each one individually as he wills.”

5. When does the Holy Spirit come into the believer? Circle AT THE MOMENT OF CONVERSION 3 WEEKS LATER 6 MONTHS LATER

Ephesians 1:13 “In him you also, when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and believed in him, were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit,”

You can see from the verses you have read that the Holy Spirit enters the believer at the moment of conversion and distributes a gift of His own choosing (or sometimes more than one gift) to every Christian. No one person will possess every gift, and there is no gift that will be given to every person. The Holy Spirit gives a variety of gifts to the different people in the church, so that the people will work together to build up the church. In order to illustrate this, God gives us an example we can clearly understand. Read 1 Corinthians 12:7-27 and answer the following questions:

1 Corinthians 12:7-27 To each is given the manifestation of the Spirit for the common good. For to one is given through the Spirit the utterance of wisdom, and to another the utterance of knowledge according to the same Spirit, to another faith by the same Spirit, to another gifts of healing by the one Spirit, to another the working of miracles, to another prophecy, to another the ability to distinguish between spirits, to another various kinds of tongues, to another the interpretation of tongues. All these are empowered by one and the same Spirit, who apportions to each one individually as he wills. For just as the body is one and has many members, and all the members of the body, though many, are one body, so it is with Christ. For in one Spirit we were all baptized into one body—Jews or Greeks, slaves or free—and all were made to drink of one Spirit. For the body does not consist of one member but of many. If the foot should say, “Because I am not a hand, I do not belong to the body,” that would not make it any less a part of the body. And if the ear should say, “Because I am not an eye, I do not belong to the body,” that would not make it any less a part of the body. But as it is, God arranged the members in the body, each one of them, as he chose. For in one Spirit we were all baptized into one body—Jews or Greeks, slaves or free—and all were made to drink of one Spirit. For the body does not consist of one member but of many. If the foot should say, “Because I am not a hand, I do not belong to the body,” that would not make it any less a part of the body. And if the ear should say, “Because I am not an eye, I do not belong to the body,” that would not make it any less a part of the body. If the whole body were an eye, where would the sense of hearing? If the whole body were an ear, where would be the sense of smell? But as it is, God arranged the members in the body, each one of them, as he chose. If all were a single member, where would the body be? As it is, there are many parts, yet one body. The eye cannot say to the hand, “I have no need of you,” nor again the head to the feet, “I have no need of you.” On the contrary, the parts of the body that seem to be weaker are indispensable, and on those parts of the body that we think less honorable we bestow the greater honor, and our unpresentable parts are treated with greater modesty, which our more presentable parts do not require. But God has so composed the body, giving greater honor to the part that lacked it, that there may be no division.
in the body, but that the members may have the same care for one another. 26 If one member suffers, all suffer together; if one member is honored, all rejoice together. 27 Now you are the body of Christ and individually members of it.

What example did God use to illustrate the way members of the church should use their spiritual gifts to help each other? _________________________________________________________
_______________________________________________________________________
_______________________________________________________________________

Are certain spiritual gifts more important than others? ___________________________
___________________________________________________________
_______________________________________________________________________
_______________________________________________________________________

Read Ephesians 4:7-8, 7 But grace was given to each one of us according to the measure of Christ's gift. 8 Therefore it says, “When he ascended on high he led a host of captives, and he gave gifts to men.” Now read Ephesians 4: 12-13, 12 to equip the saints for the work of ministry, for building up the body of Christ, 13 until we all attain to the unity of the faith and of the knowledge of the Son of God, to mature manhood, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ.

What is the purpose of the spiritual gifts God gives? ___________________________
__________________________________________
__________________________________________________________________________
_____________________________________________________________________________

God gives each of us a spiritual gift (or gifts), to be used in cooperation with others to build up the church. The gifts we have are not for our own enjoyment, but to encourage and strengthen the whole church. If we are using our gift just to encourage or please ourselves, we are not making the proper use of our gift.

D. What Are The Spiritual Gifts That The Holy Spirit Gives?

The Bible mentions more than 20 spiritual gifts, primarily in following passages.

Romans 12:6-8 Having gifts that differ according to the grace given to us, let us use them: if prophecy, in proportion to our faith; 7 if service, in our serving; the one who teaches, in his teaching; 8 the one who exHORTs, in his exhortation; the one who contributes, in generosity; the one who leads, with zeal; the one who does acts of mercy, with cheerfulness.

1 Corinthians 12:4-11 Now there are varieties of gifts, but the same Spirit; 4 and there are varieties of service, but the same Lord; 5 and there are varieties of activities, but it is the same God who empowers them all in everyone. 7 To each is given the manifestation of the Spirit for the common good. 8 For to one is given through the Spirit the utterance of wisdom, and to another the utterance of knowledge according to the same Spirit, 9 to another faith by the same Spirit, to another gifts of healing by the one Spirit, 10 to another the working of miracles, to another prophecy, to another the ability to distinguish between spirits, to another various kinds of tongues, to another the interpretation of tongues. 11 All these are empowered by one and the same Spirit, who apportions to each one individually as he wills.

Ephesians 4:11 And he gave the apostles, the prophets, the evangelists, the shepherds and teachers

1 Peter 4:9-11 Show hospitality to one another without grumbling. 10 As each has received a gift, use it to serve one another, as good stewards of God's varied grace: 11 whoever speaks, as one who speaks oracles of God; whoever serves, as one who serves by the strength that God supplies—in order that in everything God may be glorified through Jesus Christ. To him belong glory and dominion forever and ever. Amen.

Below you will find a list of spiritual gifts mentioned in these passages:

Helps - This gift enables a person to help with the needs of the church family (e.g. cleaning the church, setting up chairs and tables, helping people in the church that have physical needs such as blindness or lameness or hearing problems, etc.).
Teaching - This gift is an ability to make clear the teaching of scripture (e.g. teaching a children’s class or a Bible study in a home).

Encouragement - This gift is an ability to encourage others in the church (e.g. writing a letter of encouragement to the elders or someone in the church who is discouraged or facing a difficult decision.) It may also involve giving encouragement through counseling.

Giving - This gift is an ability to cheerfully give beyond the 10% God commands (tithe) to people in the church who have financial need (Acts 4:36-37). Thus Joseph, who was also called by the apostles Barnabas (which means son of encouragement), a Levite, a native of Cyprus, sold a field that belonged to him and brought the money and laid it at the apostles' feet.

Leadership - This gift enables a person to have the characteristics and qualities of a godly leader, so that people in the church are willing to follow that person as a leader.

Knowledge and Wisdom - These two spiritual gifts often go together. This gift enables a person to study in order to have a very good knowledge of the Bible and then be able to wisely apply the scriptures to people’s problems (such as counseling someone who is sad or lonely).

Faith - This gift enables a person to believe and trust that God will do great things even when he or she cannot see the final result (Hebrews 11:1-2 Now faith is the assurance of things hoped for, the conviction of things not seen. For by it the people of old received their commendation.)

Mercy - This gift is the ability to show mercy to those in need (such as. bringing food to someone who is sick, helping the elderly in the church, etc.).

Administration - This gift is the ability to organize projects of the church -- to oversee them from start to finish, while at the same time treating the people who are involved with love and giving them the vision to keep pursuing the goal.

Evangelism - This gift enables someone to be especially effective in giving the gospel to people, either in large crowds or just one person at a time.

Pastor - This gift is the special ability to shepherd those who are in the church.

Hospitality - This gift enables a person to cheerfully open their home to fellow Christians and others in need (1 Peter 4:9 Show hospitality to one another without grumbling). Another example of this gift may be opening up your home for a small group Bible study.

Apostle - The Greek word for this gift means “sent one.” Our word “missionary” is derived from this word. An apostle had to have seen the risen Christ (Acts 1:22 says, “beginning from the baptism of John until the day when he was taken up from us—one of these men must become with us a witness to his resurrection”). This included Paul (1 Cor. 9:1, “Am I not free? Am I not an apostle? Have I not seen Jesus our Lord? Are not you my workmanship in the Lord?”) Since no one has seen the risen Christ today, no one can claim to be an apostle.

Tongues - In Acts 2:4-12 (And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other tongues as the Spirit gave them utterance.) Now there were dwelling in Jerusalem Jews, devout men from every nation under heaven. And at this sound the multitude came together, and they were bewildered, because each one was hearing them speak in his own language. And they were amazed and astonished, saying, “Are not all these who are speaking Galileans? And how is it that we hear, each of us in his own native language? Parthians and Medes and Elamites and residents of Mesopotamia,
Judea and Cappadocia, Pontus and Asia, 10 Phrygia and Pamphylia, Egypt and the parts of Libya belonging to Cyrene, and visitors from Rome. 11 both Jews and proselytes, Cretans and Arabians—we hear them telling in our own tongues the mighty works of God.” 12 And all were amazed and perplexed, saying to one another, “What does this mean?” 13 We see a supernatural ability to speak in a foreign language. Many times there is “pressure” from others in the church and people are “forced” to speak in tongues in order to prove that they are Christians. Scripture does not agree with this. In the first place, the Bible clearly teaches that NOT everyone has this gift (1 Cor. 12:30. 30 Do all possess gifts of healing? Do all speak with tongues? Do all interpret? ). In addition, those that do speak in tongues are FORBIDDEN to do so unless they strictly follow Paul’s words in 1 Cor. 14:27-28 (27 If any speak in a tongue, let there be only two or at most three, and each in turn, and let someone interpret. 28 But if there is no one to interpret, let each of them keep silent in church and speak to himself and to God.) According to this passage, the elders of the church should forbid tongues unless it is done one at a time and with an interpreter. Also, as the purpose of spiritual gifts is to build up others, the use of tongues in a personal prayer-time does not have biblical support (1 Cor. 14:4 The one who speaks in a tongue builds up himself, but the one who prophesies builds up the church). Many Christians throughout the world believe that this gift ceased when the New Testament was completed.

Prophecy - A prophet is one who speaks the Word of God and leads the people to repentance. An example. of this is Nathan the prophet who convicted David of his sin of adultery (2 Sam. 12:7 Nathan said to David, “You are the man! Thus says the LORD, the God of Israel, ‘I anointed you king over Israel, and I delivered you out of the hand of Saul.’”). The Old Testament Hebrew word for “prophet” meant “announcing the declaration of God.” The New Testament Greek word for prophet means “one who speaks for God.” In the Bible, the words of the prophet had to come true (Deut. 18:21-22 And if you say in your heart, ‘How may we know the word that the LORD has not spoken?’— 22 when a prophet speaks in the name of the LORD, if the word does not come to pass or come true, that is a word that the LORD has not spoken; the prophet has spoken it presumptuously. You need not be afraid of him. ). If a prophecy did not come true, then that prophet would be put to death. Throughout the world many Christians believe that this gift stopped when the Bible was completed. Those that believe it continues today must be sure to obey 1 Thess. 5:20-21 Do not despise prophecies, but test everything; hold fast what is good.) and 1 John 4:1 (Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits to see whether they are from God, for many false prophets have gone out into the world.) because Satan disguises himself through many false revelations (2 Thess. 2:9-12 The coming of the lawless one is by the activity of Satan with all power and false signs and wonders, and with all wicked deception for those who are perishing, because they refused to love the truth and so be saved. Therefore God sends them a strong delusion, so that they may believe what is false, in order that all may be condemned who did not believe the truth but had pleasure in unrighteousness.)

Working of miracles - The purpose of miracles is to glorify God. Jesus performed miracles because of deep compassion on those who were suffering with illnesses such as blindness, leprosy, etc. He never performed miracles for the selfish purpose of putting on a display. Jesus used miracles to inspire faith (Matt. 8:23-27 And when he got into the boat, his disciples followed him. 24 And behold, there arose a great storm on the sea, so that the boat was being swamped by the waves; but he was asleep. 25 And they went and woke him, saying, “Save us, Lord; we are perishing.” 26 And he said to them, “Why are you afraid, O you of little faith?” Then he rose and rebuked the winds and the sea, and there was a great calm. 27 And the men marveled, saying, “What sort of man is this, that even winds and sea obey him?”), but He also refused to do a miracle when the people wanted to see something “sensational” (Mark 8:11-13 The Pharisees came and began to argue with him, seeking from him a sign from heaven to test him. And he sighed deeply in his spirit and said, “Why does this generation seek a sign? Truly, I say to you, no sign will be given to this generation.” And he left them, got into the boat again, and went to the other side. )

Healing - Biblical healings were immediate and complete (Acts 3:1-8, 1 Now Peter and John were going up to the temple at the hour of prayer, the ninth hour. 2 And a man lame from birth was being carried, whom they laid daily at the gate of the temple that is called the Beautiful Gate to ask alms of those entering the temple. 3 Seeing Peter and John about to go into the temple, he asked to receive alms. 4 And Peter directed his gaze at him, as did John, and said, “Look at us.” 5 And he fixed his attention on them, expecting to receive something from them. 6 But Peter said, “I have no silver and gold, but what I do have I give to you. In the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, rise up and walk!” 7 And he took him by the right hand and raised him up, and immediately his feet and ankles were made strong. 8 And leaping up he stood and began to walk, and entered the temple with them, walking and leaping and praising God. ). A true healing that occurs today must be complete and continuous. Today, we see many incomplete healings and false claims by people who are not true healers but rather are “fakes.” Throughout the world many Christians believe that this gift stopped when the Bible was completed. Everyone agrees however, that any sick person in the church should have the elders anoint him with oil and pray for him (James 5:14-16, 14 Is anyone among you sick? Let him call for the elders of the church, and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord. 15 And the prayer of faith will save the one who is sick, and the Lord will
raise him up. And if he has committed sins, he will be forgiven. 16 Therefore, confess your sins to one another and pray for one another, that you may be healed. The prayer of a righteous person has great power as it is working.)

**Discernment** - This gift enables a person to develop much spiritual wisdom as they study the Bible so that one is able to discern if the spiritual gifts manifested in the church are from God or from Satan.

**E. How Do I Discover My Spiritual Gifts?**

1. **Educate:** The first step to identifying your spiritual gift is to be informed and educated about the various spiritual gifts from the Bible. Read again Romans 12:6-8, 1 Corinthians 12:4-11, Ephesians 4:11, 1 Peter 4:9-11. Study each of the gifts listed above and ask God to help you to discover your spiritual gift or gifts.

   a) Romans 12:6-8 Having gifts that differ according to the grace given to us, let us use them: if prophecy, in proportion to our faith; 7 if service, in our serving; the one who teaches, in his teaching; 8 the one who exhorts, in his exhortation; the one who contributes, in generosity; the one who leads, with zeal; the one who does acts of mercy, with cheerfulness.

   b) 1 Corinthians 12:4-11. 4Now there are varieties of gifts, but the same Spirit; 5 and there are varieties of service, but the same Lord; 6 and there are varieties of activities, but it is the same God who empowers them all in everyone. 7 To each is given the manifestation of the Spirit for the common good. 8 For to one is given through the Spirit the utterance of wisdom, and to another the utterance of knowledge according to the same Spirit, 9 to another faith by the same Spirit, to another gifts of healing by the one Spirit, 10 to another the working of miracles, to another prophecy, to another the ability to distinguish between spirits, to another various kinds of tongues, to another the interpretation of tongues. All these are empowered by one and the same Spirit, who apportions to each one individually as he wills.

   c) Ephesians 4:11.” And he gave the apostles, the prophets, the evangelists, the shepherds and teachers”

   d) 1 Peter 4:9-11. 9 Show hospitality to one another without grumbling. 10 As each has received a gift, use it to serve one another, as good stewards of God's varied grace: 11 whoever speaks, as one who speaks oracles of God; whoever serves, as one who serves by the strength that God supplies—in order that in everything God may be glorified through Jesus Christ. To him belong glory and dominion forever and ever. Amen.

2. **Examine:** The second step is to examine your heart and abilities. What is it that you enjoy doing - opening your home to others? Serving those who are needy? Teaching Bible classes? Counseling those who are discouraged? Read through the list of gifts and consider which ones you think you might be able to do well in a way that would strengthen the church.

3. **Experiment:** The third step is to experiment with what you think your gift is. Try a variety of spiritual gifts and see if any one gift especially fits you (i.e. you enjoy it and do it well). Ask yourself, “Am I able to build up/strengthen the church by using this gift?”

4. **Evaluate:** The fourth step is to have someone in the church evaluate your gift and calling. For example, if you think you have the gift of evangelism but no one is getting saved, then you probably do not have the gift! If you think you have the gift of leadership but no one is following you, then you do not have the gift of leadership. Be sensitive and open to the comments made by the leaders of your church as they evaluate your gift.

It is important that you identify your spiritual gift or gifts and begin to use it in your local church to help with the work of ministry. Imagine the leader of your church trying to lift a taxi by himself. It would be impossible. But if 20 people helped him, his load would be light. Likewise, when we use our spiritual gifts, we help the leadership of the church to accomplish the work of the ministry, and we are obedient to God.
F. The Fruit of The Holy Spirit

Before we end this chapter, we should also briefly study the fruit of the Holy Spirit. The fruit of the Holy Spirit is something that is developed in our lives as we study God’s Word and apply it to our attitudes and behavior. The following story will help us understand a little more about this fruit of the Holy Spirit.

A man had two children, a boy and a girl who attended the same school and were in the same class. Neither of the children liked to learn how to spell new words. Every week the children had to take a test to show the teacher that they mastered the spelling of new words. One week the boy would score highest in the class on the test and the next week he would fail the test with the lowest score. On the weeks that the boy did very well, his sister failed had the lowest score in class but on the weeks the boy failed the test the sister had the highest score in the class. One day as the father was working on his farm the teacher walked by and stopped to chat with the father. He mentioned to the father how strange it was that each week one child had the highest score in class and the other had the lowest score and the teacher couldn’t figure out why this was. The father told the teacher that he knew the reason for this mystery. Each week the father only had time to study with one child. Every day he would ask a child how to spell the assigned words. One week he would work with the boy and the next week he would work with the girl. In a way it was as if the father was helping to "feed the brain" of one child each week while neglecting to "feed the brain" of the other. The child the father "fed questions to" each week scored big while the neglected child scored low.

This story is like our own lives. We have a sinful side of us that wants to do things that are wrong. We also have a side that wants to be obedient to God and do things that please Him. The side of our life that will be victorious is the side that we “feed” the most.

Read Galatians 5: 17-21. 17 For the desires of the flesh are against the Spirit, and the desires of the Spirit are against the flesh, for these are opposed to each other, to keep you from doing the things you want to do. 18 But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the law. 19 Now the works of the flesh are evident: sexual immorality, impurity, sensuality, 20 idolatry, sorcery, enmity, strife, jealousy, fits of anger, rivalries, dissensions, divisions, 21 envy, drunkenness, orgies, and things like these. I warn you, as I warned you before, that those who do such things will not inherit the kingdom of God. From this passage, what are the characteristics of a "sinful nature"?__________________________________________

The characteristics listed in the verse above are the ones that we SHOULD NOT FEED. We feed the sinful nature by giving into sinful desires. (Colossians 3:5-9 says Put to death therefore what is earthly in you: sexual immorality, impurity, passion, evil desire, and covetousness, which is idolatry. 6 On account of these the wrath of God is coming. 7 In these you too once walked, when you were living in them. 8 But now you must put them all away: anger, wrath, malice, slander, and obscene talk from your mouth. 9 Do not lie to one another, seeing that you have put off the old self with its practices. Every time we allow temptation to win, we are feeding our sinful nature, and allowing our sinful nature in us to have control.

Now read Galatians 5: 22-23. 22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, 23 gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law. According to the passage list the fruit of the Spirit. ____________________________________________

These verses are the items we SHOULD FEED. By spending time studying God's Word and in prayer, thereby "feeding" our spiritual side and developing more of the Fruit of the Spirit. Someone has said that this fruit which is produced when we are filled with the Holy Spirit is a perfect picture of Christ-likeness.
Discussion Questions

Looking at the list of spiritual gifts, which spiritual gift or gifts do you think you have? ___________________
___________________________________________________________________________
___________________________________________________________________________
___________________________________________________________________________

How are you using this gift (or gifts) to strengthen your church? __________________________
___________________________________________________________________________
___________________________________________________________________________
___________________________________________________________________________

If you are NOT using your gift (gifts) adequately, what steps can you take to begin appropriately exercising your spiritual gifts? ______________________________
___________________________________________________________________________
___________________________________________________________________________
___________________________________________________________________________
Assignment for chapter 9

What do I Need to Know about Spiritual Warfare?

NOTE: Complete and check each of the following assignments before you on to chapter 10:

______ Study and complete the material for chapter 9.
______ Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 9 with the person who is discipling you.
______ Memorize Luke 10:19 and 1 John 4:4, and tell these verses to the person who is discipling you.
______ Review how your Bible study plan from lesson 4 is going.
______ Review the memory verses from previous weeks, and review the names of all the books of the New Testament and Old Testament.

☐ John 3:16-17. 16 “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life. 17 For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the world might be saved through him.

☐ 1 John 5:12-13. 12 Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life. 13 I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God that you may know that you have eternal life.

☐ Exodus 15:11. 11 “Who is like you, O LORD, among the gods? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, awesome in glorious deeds, doing wonders.

☐ Psalm 119:9-11. 9 How can a young man keep his way pure? By guarding it according to your word. 10 With my whole heart I seek you; let me not wander from your commandments! 11 I have stored up your word in my heart, that I might not sin against you.

☐ 1 John 5:14. 14 And this is the confidence that we have toward him, that if we ask anything according to his will he hears us.

☐ Mathew 28:18-20. 18 And Jesus came and said to them, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19 Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.”

☐ Colossians 3:12-14. 12 Put on then, as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved, compassionate hearts, kindness, humility, meekness, and patience, 13 bearing with one another and, if one has a complaint against another, forgiving each other; as the Lord has forgiven you, so you also must forgive. 14 And above all these put on love, which binds everything together in perfect harmony.

☐ Galatians 5: 22-23. 22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, 23 gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law.

☐ Luke 10:19. 19 Behold, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall hurt you.

☐ 1 John 4:4. 4 Little children, you are from God and have overcome them, for he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.

76
Chapter 9

What do I Need to Know about Spiritual Warfare?

Memorize Luke 10:19 and 1 John 4:4

Luke 10:19. 19 Behold, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall hurt you.

1 John 4:4. 4 Little children, you are from God and have overcome them, for he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.

Introduction

Spiritual warfare is not always easy to see, but it is very real. There is an ongoing battle between God and Satan that affects the lives of both believers and non-believers.

Before Satan’s rebellion, he was a very beautiful, powerful angel who had a position of honor before God (read Ezek. 28:12-17). But after his fall, he became the enemy of both God and God’s people. Read about his rebellion against God in Isaiah 14:12-15, and underline in that passage all 5 times that Satan says “I will.”

Ezekiel 28:12-1912 “Son of man, raise a lamentation over the king of Tyre, and say to him, Thus says the Lord God: “You were the signet of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.13 You were in Eden, the garden of God; every precious stone was your covering, sardius, topaz, and diamond, beryl, onyx, and jasper, sapphire, emerald, and carbuncle; and crafted in gold were your settings and your engravings. On the day that you were created they were prepared. 14 You were an anointed guardian cherub. I placed you; you were on the holy mountain of God; in the midst of the stones of fire you walked.15 You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created, till unrighteousness was found in you. 16 In the abundance of your trade you were filled with violence in your midst, and you sinned; so I cast you as a profane thing from the mountain of God, and I destroyed you, O guardian cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire. 17 Your heart was proud because of your beauty; you corrupted your wisdom for the sake of your splendor. I cast you to the ground; I exposed you before kings, to feast their eyes on you. 18 By the multitude of your iniquities, in the unrighteousness of your trade you profaned your sanctuaries; so I brought fire out from your midst; it consumed you, and I turned you to ashes on the earth in the sight of all who saw you. 19 All who know you among the peoples are appalled at you; you have come to a dreadful end and shall be no more forever.”

Isaiah 14:12-15 12 “How you are fallen from heaven, O Day Star, son of Dawn! How you are cut down to the ground, you who laid the nations low! 13 You said in your heart, ‘I will ascend to heaven; I will set my throne on high; I will sit on the mount of assembly in the far reaches of the north; 14 I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High.’ 15 But you are brought down to Sheol, to the far reaches of the pit.

Satan’s rebellion was due to the sin of pride (see 1 Timothy 3:6 and Ezekiel 28:12-19). He wanted to glorify himself instead of glorifying God, and because of this he was punished by being thrown out of heaven. Scripture indicates that in his fall he took 1/3 of the angels with him (read Rev. 12:4).

1 Timothy 3:6. 6 He must not be a recent convert, or he may become puffed up with conceit and fall into the condemnation of the devil.

Rev. 12:4. 4 His tail swept down a third of the stars of heaven and cast them to the earth. And the dragon stood before the woman who was about to give birth, so that when she bore her child he might devour it.

1. Satan’s names describe what he is like. Some of his names are:
   a. Satan (this Hebrew word means “adversary” or “enemy”; Matthew 4:10)
   b. Destroyer (Rev 9:11)
   c. Tempter (Matt 4:3, 1 Thess 3:5)
d. Accuser of the brethren (Rev. 12:10)  
e. Deceiver (Rev 12:9, 20:3)  
f. Father of lies (John 8:44)  
g. Disguised as an angel of light (2 Cor. 11:14)  
h. Prince of this world (John 12:31)  
i. Devil (which means "slanderer," Matthew 4:1)

Matthew 4:10. 10 Then Jesus said to him, “Be gone, Satan! For it is written, “You shall worship the Lord your God and him only shall you serve.”

Rev 9:11. 11 They have as king over them the angel of the bottomless pit. His name in Hebrew is Abaddon, and in Greek he is called Apollyon.

Matt 4:3. 3 And the tempter came and said to him, “If you are the Son of God, command these stones to become loaves of bread.”

1 Thess 3:5. 5 For this reason, when I could bear it no longer, I sent to learn about your faith, for fear that somehow the tempter had tempted you and our labor would be in vain.

Rev 12:10. 10 And I heard a loud voice in heaven, saying, “Now the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ have come, for the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down, who accuses them day and night before our God.

Rev 12:9. 9 And the great dragon was thrown down, that ancient serpent, who is called the devil and Satan, the deceiver of the whole world— he was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him.

Rev 20:3 3 and threw him into the pit, and shut it and sealed it over him, so that he might not deceive the nations any longer, until the thousand years were ended. After that he must be released for a little while.

John 8:44 44 You are of your father the devil, and your will is to do your father's desires. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks out of his own character, for he is a liar and the father of lies.

2 Cor. 11:14 14 And no wonder, for even Satan disguises himself as an angel of light.

John 12:31 31 Now is the judgment of this world; now will the ruler of this world be cast out.

Matthew 4:1 1 Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil.

2. What does Satan do?  
   a. Tempts (2 Cor. 11:3)  
   b. Steals, kills and destroys (John 10:10)  
   c. Tries to distract people from the Gospel (Matt. 13:19)  
   d. Accuses believers (Rev. 12:10)  
   e. Hinders missionaries (1 Thess. 2:18)  
   f. Causes persecution against believers (Rev. 2:10)  
   g. Blinds the minds of unbelievers (2 Cor. 4:4) and snatches the Word from their hearts (Luke 8:12).  
   h. Prowls like a lion, seeking to devour you (1 Peter 5:8)

2 Cor. 11:3 3 But I am afraid that as the serpent deceived Eve by his cunning, your thoughts will be led astray from a sincere and pure devotion to Christ.

John 10:10 10 The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy. I came that they may have life and have it abundantly.

Matt. 13:19 19 When anyone hears the word of the kingdom and does not understand it, the evil one comes and snatches away what has been sown in his heart. This is what was sown along the path.

Rev 12:10. 10 And I heard a loud voice in heaven, saying, “Now the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ have come, for the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down, who accuses them day and night before our God.

1 Thess. 2:18 18 because we wanted to come to you—I, Paul, again and again—but Satan hindered us.
Rev. 2:10 ¹⁰ Do not fear what you are about to suffer. Behold, the devil is about to throw some of you into prison, that you may be tested, and for ten days you will have tribulation. Be faithful unto death, and I will give you the crown of life.

2 Cor 4:4 ¹ In their case the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelievers, to keep them from seeing the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.

Luke 8:12 ¹² The ones along the path are those who have heard; then the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts, so that they may not believe and be saved.

1 Peter 5:8 ⁸ Be sober-minded; be watchful. Your adversary the devil prowls around like a roaring lion, seeking someone to devour.

**How Does Satan Influence Christians?**

While Christians cannot be demon possessed (demon possession is discussed later in this lesson), they can be influenced and tempted by Satan. One of Satan’s main goals is to try to get Christians to be disobedient to God in various ways.

One of the biggest ways that Satan works in the lives of Christians is by preventing them from studying their Bible and praying. If Satan can prevent a Christian from spending time with God in Bible study and prayer, he can prevent them from having power in their lives, so this is an area of real spiritual warfare. Satan works in ways that are usually not obvious to us. He may try to prevent you from praying by keeping you busy with other “important” things, or by convincing you that you are too tired or that it is not really necessary.

How does Satan try to keep you from praying and studying the Bible?  
______________

Satan also is constantly trying to tempt Christians to sin in their actions. He tempts us to sin in various ways, such as stealing, lying, sexual immorality, gossiping, etc.

What is an area of temptation that is difficult for you?  
______________

In addition to tempting us to sin by our actions, Satan also tempts us to sin in our attitude. He tries to focus our minds on things that will make us bitter or critical or depressed or angry or unforgiving. He tries to keep us from being thankful and rejoicing. How does Satan tempt you to sin in your attitude?  
______________

Read 1 Corinthians 10:13. ¹³ No temptation has overtaken you that is not common to man. God is faithful, and he will not let you be tempted beyond your ability, but with the temptation he will also provide the way of escape, that you may be able to endure it.

What is true about every temptation we face?  
______________
Who will help you when you are tempted?

Does God always remove the temptation?

List the two things God does to help you when you are tempted.

It is a great comfort to Christians to know that God will help them to resist temptation and will provide a “way of escape.” The Bible tells us about four different “ways of escape” when dealing with temptation:

1. Know the truths of scripture
   The best way to defend against Satan’s temptations and lies is by knowing and memorizing scripture. This is the way Christ dealt with Satan when Satan tempted Him in the wilderness (Matthew 4:1-11). Every time Satan tempted Him, Jesus responded by saying, “It is written . . .” “It is written . . .” Jesus used scripture to defeat the devil.

   Matthew 4:1-11 1 Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil.
   2 And after fasting forty days and forty nights, he was hungry. 3 And the tempter came and said to him, “If you are the Son of God, command these stones to become loaves of bread.” 4 But he answered, “It is written, “Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that comes from the mouth of God.” 5 Then the devil took him to the holy city and set him on the pinnacle of the temple 6 and said to him, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, “He will command his angels concerning you,’ and “On their hands they will bear you up, lest you strike your foot against a stone.” 7 Jesus said to him, “Again it is written, ‘You shall not put the Lord your God to the test.’” 8 Again, the devil took him to a very high mountain and showed him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory.
   9 And he said to him, “All these I will give you, if you will fall down and worship me.” 10 Then Jesus said to him, “Be gone, Satan! For it is written, “You shall worship the Lord your God and him only shall you serve.” 11 Then the devil left him, and behold, angels came and were ministering to him.

   In order to effectively handle spiritual warfare, you must know your Bible. In the spiritual armor of a Christian, the Bible is referred to as “the sword” (Ephesians 6:17, “and take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God”), and a person who does not know this “sword” very well is not prepared for spiritual warfare. Knowing scripture is very important because Satan’s lies cannot stand up to the truth of scripture. For example, if Satan tries to make a new convert doubt that he is saved, the best thing for that person to do is to have a scripture memorized that clearly says that anyone who has received Jesus Christ will have everlasting life. Declaring a verse like John 5:24 (“Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever hears my word and believes him who sent me has eternal life. He does not come into judgment, but has passed from death to life.”) in Satan’s face will defeat his lies that can lead to doubt and discouragement and sin.

2. Maintain a regular devotional life
   When a Christian has a deep and regular devotional life, he is much less likely to give in to the temptations of Satan. The more you love God and the more you are aware of His presence and submitted to Him -- the easier it will be to resist temptation. James 4:7 says, “Submit yourselves to God. Resist the devil and he will flee from you.” When you submit to God you are able to resist the devil and cause him to flee.

3. Pray for strength to resist temptation
At the moment when you are being tempted, it is important to pray and ask God to give you victory over the temptation. In Luke 22:40 Jesus said to His disciples, "Pray that you will not fall into temptation." When we pray, God will give us strength to resist. In 2 Thessalonians 3:3 we read, “But the Lord is faithful. He will establish you and guard you against the evil one.”

4. Flee temptation

Sometimes the best way to resist temptation is to flee -- to get away from the source of temptation. This is especially true with the temptation of lust. Joseph is a good example of this in Genesis 39. When Potiphar’s wife tried to seduce him, did Joseph sit down beside her and pray for God to help him resist temptation? No! He ran away! 1 Corinthians 6:18 tells us to flee from the temptation of sexual sin. Fleeing sexual temptation means being careful not to get into a situation that might cause you to lust. And if you unexpectedly find yourself in a situation where you are tempted to sin, leave as quickly as you can. This also true of any situation in which there is a struggle with addictive behavior—flee the temptation!

Genesis 39:7-12. 7 And after a time his master's wife cast her eyes on Joseph and said, “Lie with me.” 8 But he refused and said to his master's wife, “Behold, because of me my master has no concern about anything in the house, and he has put everything that he has in my charge. 9 He is not greater in this house than I am, nor has he kept back anything from me except you, because you are his wife. How then can I do this great wickedness and sin against God?” 10 And as she spoke to Joseph day after day, he would not listen to her, to lie beside her or to be with her. 11 But one day, when he went into the house to do his work and none of the men of the house was there in the house, 12 she caught him by his garment, saying, “Lie with me.” But he left his garment in her hand and fled and got out of the house.

1 Corinthians 6:18, “Flee from sexual immorality. Every other sin a person commits is outside the body, but the sexually immoral person sins against his own body.”

What are some ways you can fight against Satan when he tempts you in the following areas:

a. Not reading your Bible or praying.

_________________________________________________________________________

b. Your behavior/actions (Pick a specific sinful behavior and write a specific way to fight it. Example: If the sin is gossip, then avoid people who gossip, change the subject, memorize scripture such as Psalm 141:3, “Set a guard, O Lord, over my mouth; keep watch over the door of my lips!”)

_________________________________________________________________________

_________________________________________________________________________

c. Your attitude (Think of a particular temptation you struggle with, and write a specific way to fight it. Example: If the sin is always being critical, then pray for God to help you see the positives, memorize scripture such as Ephesians 4:29, “Let no corrupting talk come out of your mouths, but only such as is good for building up, as fits the occasion, that it may give grace to those who hear,” etc.)

_________________________________________________________________________

_________________________________________________________________________

What Is Demon Possession?
The term “demon possession” is used to describe what happens when Satan or one of his demons enters a
What Does Demonic Possession Look Like?

A. Violent Examples

Demon possession can be obvious and violent. Describe what the people saw in these passages:

Mark 5:1-20 They came to the other side of the sea, to the country of the Gerasenes. 2 And when Jesus had stepped out of the boat, immediately there met him out of the tombs a man with an unclean spirit. 3 He lived among the tombs. And no one could bind him anymore, not even with a chain, 4 for he had often been bound with shackles and chains, but he wrench ed the chains apart, and he broke the shackles in pieces. No one had the strength to subdue him. 5 Night and day among the tombs and on the mountains he was always crying out and cutting himself with stones. 6 And when he saw Jesus from afar, he ran and fell down before him. 7 And crying out with a loud voice, he said, “What have you to do with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I adjure you by God, do not torment me.” 8 For he was saying to him, “Come out of the man, you unclean spirit!” 9 And Jesus asked him, “What is your name?” He replied, “My name is Legion, for we are many.” 10 And he begged him earnestly not to send them out of the country. 11 Now a great herd of pigs was feeding there on the hillside, 12 and they begged him, saying, “Send us to the pigs; let us enter them.” 13 So he gave them permission. And the unclean spirits came out and entered the pigs; and the herd, numbering about two thousand, rushed down the steep bank into the sea and drowned in the sea. 14 The herdsmen fled and told it in the city and in the country. And people came to see what it was that had happened. 15 And they came to Jesus and saw the demon-possessed man, the one who had had the legion, sitting there, clothed and in his right mind, and they were afraid. 16 And those who had seen it described to them what had happened to the demon-possessed man and to the pigs. 17 And they began to beg Jesus to depart from their region. 18 As he was getting into the boat, the man who had been possessed with demons begged him that he might be with him. 19 And he did not permit him but said to him, “Go home to your friends and tell them how much the Lord has done for you, and how he has had mercy on you.” 20 And he went away and began to proclaim in the Decapolis how much Jesus had done for him, and everyone marveled.

Mark 1:26 26 And the unclean spirit, convulsing him and crying out with a loud voice, came out of him.

Mark 9:17-26 17 And someone from the crowd answered him, “Teacher, I brought my son to you, for he has a spirit that makes him mute. 18 And whenever it seizes him, it throws him down, and he foams and grinds his teeth and becomes rigid. So I asked your disciples to cast it out, and they were not able.” 19 And he answered them, “O faithless generation, how long am I to be with you? How long am I to bear with you? Bring him to me.” 20 And they brought the boy to him. And when the spirit saw him, immediately it convulsed the boy, and he fell on the ground and rolled about, foaming at the mouth. 21 And Jesus asked his father, “How long has this been happening to him?” And he said, “From childhood. 22 And it has often cast him into fire and into water, to destroy him. But if you can do anything, have compassion on us and help us.” 23 And Jesus said to him, “‘If you can! All things are possible for one who believes.’” 24 Immediately the father of the child cried out and said, “I believe; help my unbelief!” 25 And when Jesus saw that a crowd came running together, he rebuked the unclean spirit, saying to it, “You mute and deaf spirit, I command you, come out of him and never enter him again.” 26 And after crying out and convulsing him terribly, it came out, and the boy was like a corpse, so that most of them said, “He is dead.”
Acts 8:7  For unclean spirits, crying out with a loud voice, came out of many who had them, and many who were paralyzed or lame were healed.

---

B. Non-Violent Examples

Demon possession can also look very sophisticated and non-violent. In Luke 22:3 and John 13:27 we are told that “Satan entered Judas.” Judas was in a position of leadership and was trusted as the treasurer for the disciples. There was no outward sign that Satan had entered Judas. Satan did not do this in a dramatic, obvious way.

Another example is found in Acts 16:16-18.16 As we were going to the place of prayer, we were met by a slave girl who had a spirit of divination and brought her owners much gain by fortune-telling. 17 She followed Paul and us, crying out, “These men are servants of the Most High God, who proclaim to you the way of salvation.” 18 And this she kept doing for many days. Paul, having become greatly annoyed, turned and said to the spirit, “I command you in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her.” And it came out that very hour. Although she was demon possessed, it was not outwardly obvious — in fact, she followed the disciples saying, “These men are servants of the Most High God, who are telling you the way to be saved.” It is important to remember that Satan can appear innocent and harmless, or even as an “angel of light” (something beautiful such as false religions).

What Can We Do When Confronted With Demonic Powers?

In Ephesians 6:12 we read, “For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the cosmic powers over this present darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly places.” Our weapons against Satan are spiritual weapons. As was mentioned earlier, one of the most important weapons against Satan is the Word of God. (Ephesians 6:17, “and take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.”). It is VERY IMPORTANT for you to memorize scripture and use scripture against the devil, just as Jesus did in Matthew 4:1-10. Knowing and memorizing scripture is the single most important thing you can do to defend yourself against the attacks and temptations of Satan. How are you doing in the area of memorizing scripture? Are you in the habit of memorizing new scriptures on a regular basis, and reviewing scriptures you have memorized in the past?

Matthew 4:1-10. 1 Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil. 2 And after fasting forty days and forty nights, he was hungry. 3 And the tempter came and said to him, “If you are the Son of God, command these stones to become loaves of bread.” 4 But he answered, “It is written, “Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that comes from the mouth of God.”” 5 Then the devil took him to the holy city and set him on the pinnacle of the temple 6 and said to him, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, “He will command his angels concerning you,’ and “On their hands they will bear you up, lest you strike your foot against a stone.”” 7 Jesus said to him, “Again it is written, ‘You shall not put the Lord your God to the test.’” 8 Again, the devil took him to a very high mountain and showed him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory. 9 And he said to him, “All these I will give you, if you will fall down and worship me.” 10 Then Jesus said to him, “Be gone, Satan! For it is written, “You shall worship the Lord your God and him only shall you serve.”

In addition to knowing scripture, here are some other important things to remember when you are dealing with demonic powers:

1) Know the authority you have been given

Read Luke 10:17-20. 17 The seventy-two returned with joy, saying, “Lord, even the demons are subject to us in your name!” 18 And he said to them, “I saw Satan fall like lightning from heaven. 19 Behold, I have given you authority to
tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall hurt you. 20 Nevertheless, do not rejoice in this, that the spirits are subject to you, but rejoice that your names are written in heaven."

What authority has been given to those who are Christians? ______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

Read Acts 8:6-8 and Acts 16:18. The ability to expel demons is not related to any spiritual gift, but has to do with the believer’s position in Christ and His authority over the powers of darkness (Ephesians 1:19-21; 2:4-6). At the cross, Jesus “disarmed the powers and authorities,” (Colossians 2:15) which means that those who believe in Christ can have the victory over Satan and his demons.

Acts 8:6-8. 6 And the crowds with one accord paid attention to what was being said by Philip when they heard him and saw the signs that he did. 7 For unclean spirits, crying out with a loud voice, came out of many who had them, and many who were paralyzed or lame were healed. 8 So there was much joy in that city.

Acts 16:18. 18 And this she kept doing for many days. Paul, having become greatly annoyed, turned and said to the spirit, “I command you in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her.” And it came out that very hour.

Ephesians 1:19-21. 19 and what is the immeasurable greatness of his power toward us who believe, according to the working of his great might 20 that he worked in Christ when he raised him from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places, 21 far above all rule and authority and power and dominion, and above every name that is named, not only in this age but also in the one to come.

Ephesians 2:4-6. 4 But God, being rich in mercy, because of the great love with which he loved us, 5 even when we were dead in our trespasses, made us alive together with Christ—by grace you have been saved— 6 and raised us up with him and seated us with him in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus,

Colossians 2:15. 15 He disarmed the rulers and authorities and put them to open shame, by triumphing over them in him.

An illustration of the authority we have over Satan can be seen in the example of a policeman who tells a truck driver to stop. The truck has a great deal of power, but the policeman has authority to tell it to stop, so the truck driver must obey. Likewise, Satan is a powerful adversary, but we have authority over him in Jesus’ name (Luke 10:19, “Behold, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall hurt you.”

2) Do not fear

Read 2 Tim. 1:7. “for God gave us a spirit not of fear but of power and love and self-control.”

What spirit has God not given us, and what spirit has He given us? ______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________

Read 1 John 4:4. “Little children, you are from God and have overcome them, for he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.” What does this verse tell us about the power of God and the power of Satan? ______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________
______________________________________________________
Because God does not give us a spirit of fear and because of the promise that God who is in us is greater than Satan, we should have no fear of Satan or demons.

3) **Put on the armor of God**
   The Bible tells us that we have protection from the schemes of Satan, namely, the “armor of God”. Read Ephesians 6:10-18 and answer the following questions:
   
   10 Finally, be strong in the Lord and in the strength of his might. 11 Put on the whole armor of God, that you may be able to stand against the schemes of the devil. 12 For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the cosmic powers over this present darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly places. 13 Therefore take up the whole armor of God, that you may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand firm. 14 Stand therefore, having fastened on the belt of truth, and having put on the breastplate of righteousness, 15 and, as shoes for your feet, having put on the readiness given by the gospel of peace. 16 In all circumstances take up the shield of faith, with which you can extinguish all the flaming darts of the evil one; 17 and take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God, praying at all times in the Spirit, with all prayer and supplication. To that end keep alert with all perseverance, making supplication for all the saints,
   
   Who is our struggle against? Who is it not against? (vs. 12)
   
   What does the armor of God give us the strength to do? (vs. 11, 13)
   
   Below is a list of the different parts of the armor of God, along with what they can protect us from:
   
   - Belt of Truth → counteracts the lies of Satan
   - Breastplate of Righteousness → counteracts Satan's impurity.
   - Shoes of the Gospel of Peace → counteracts Satan's deception of the nations
   - Shield of Faith → counteracts Satan's fiery arrows of doubt
   - Helmet of Salvation → counteracts Satan's false religions
   - Sword of the Word → counteracts Satan's false teachings
   
   **Key Question:** All of the armor is DEFENSIVE except for which one? The Bible is the sword in our hand that we use to conquer enemy territory. The fully equipped Christian needs both defensive AND offensive armor. Remember to use the armor of God when you encounter spiritual warfare by speaking the truth, claiming the righteousness of God, proclaiming the gospel of peace, holding firm to your faith in God, standing on the knowledge of your salvation, and fighting back with the powerful sword of the Word of God.

4) **Two are usually better than one**
   When confronting Satan/demons, it is better not to go alone but to go with another Christian. In Luke 10, Jesus sent His disciples out two by two so that they could offer support, encouragement, and accountability to each other. As Ecclesiastes 4:9-10 says, “Two are better than one, because they have a good return for their work: If one falls down, his friend can help him up.”

5) **Be humble**
   Remember that one of the key elements of spiritual warfare is humility. Humility is something that Satan does not have. Lack of humility (pride) was the cause of his fall. Our humility is the exact opposite of Satan’s pride. We need to always keep in mind that the power and authority we have over Satan comes not by anything we do or by any goodness or greatness on our part, but only because of the power of God. In all things we must seek to glorify God and be humble in ourselves. In what ways
have you been guilty of the sin of pride?

**Can A Christian Be Demon-Possessed?**
The Bible teaches that if a person is a Christian, he is free from demonic possession because 1 Cor. 6:19-20 says that a Christian is the temple of the Holy Spirit. It is impossible for Satan or his demons to live in the temple of the Holy Spirit. In addition, there are many scriptures which teach us that God protects His children from the evil one. Look up the verses and write what they tell us about God’s protection.

1 Cor. 6:19-20. Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit within you, whom you have from God? You are not your own, for you were bought with a price. So glorify God in your body.

Col. 1:13: “He has delivered us from the domain of darkness and transferred us to the kingdom of his beloved Son,” ________________

Acts 26:18: “to open their eyes, so that they may turn from darkness to light and from the power of Satan to God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins and a place among those who are sanctified by faith in me.” ________________

John 17:15: “I do not ask that you take them out of the world, but that you keep them from the evil one.” ________________

1 Thess. 3:3: “But the Lord is faithful. He will establish you and guard you against the evil one.” ________________

1 John 4:4: “Little children, you are from God and have overcome them, for he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.” ________________

1 John 5:18: “We know that everyone who has been born of God does not keep on sinning, but he who was born of God protects him, and the evil one does not touch him.” ________________

**DEVOTIONAL THOUGHT:** Have you ever experienced the “TLC” of Satan? First, he Tempts you, then he Lies to you, saying “If you do this sin you will be so happy and satisfied.” Then, after you’ve committed the sin, he Condemns you (see Rev. 12:10) and says “What kind of rotten Christian would do what you just did?” Discuss your experiences in these areas. How does Romans 8:1 counteract Satan’s condemnation?

Rev. 12:10. And I heard a loud voice in heaven, saying, “Now the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ have come, for the accuser of our brothers has been thrown down, who accuses them day and night before our God.

Romans 8:1. “There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus.”

**THIS WEEK:** Work on putting into practice the action steps you wrote on page 80 to deal with temptations you face. Next week, tell the person who is discipling you how you did in those areas. Don’t get discouraged if it takes a while to conquer those areas of sin—just keep pressing on and you will know God’s blessing!
Assignment for Chapter 10

What do I Need to Know about Stewardship?

NOTE: Complete and check each of the following assignments before you on to chapter 11:

- Study and complete the material for chapter 10.
- Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 10 with the person who is discipling you.
- Memorize Malachi 3:10, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.
- Review your actions steps regarding temptation (page 28). How are you doing in these areas?
- Review the memory verses from previous weeks, and review the names of the books of the New Testament and Old Testament.

☐ John 3:16-17. 16 “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life. 17 For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the world might be saved through him.

☐ 1 John 5:12-13. 12 Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life. 13 I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God that you may know that you have eternal life.

☐ Exodus 15:11. 11 “Who is like you, O LORD, among the gods? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, awesome in glorious deeds, doing wonders

☐ Psalm 119:9-11. 9 How can a young man keep his way pure? By guarding it according to your word. 10 With my whole heart I seek you; let me not wander from your commandments! 11 I have stored up your word in my heart, that I might not sin against you.

☐ 1 John 5:14. 14 And this is the confidence that we have toward him, that if we ask anything according to his will he hears us.

☐ Mathew 28:18-20. 18 And Jesus came and said to them, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19 Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.”

☐ Colossians 3:12-14. 12 Put on then, as God’s chosen ones, holy and beloved, compassionate hearts, kindness, humility, meekness, and patience, 13 bearing with one another and, if one has a complaint against another, forgiving each other; as the Lord has forgiven you, so you also must forgive. 14 And above all these put on love, which binds everything together in perfect harmony.

☐ Galatians 5: 22-23. 22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, 23 gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law.

☐ Luke 10:19. 19 Behold, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall hurt you.

☐ 1 John 4:4. 4 Little children, you are from God and have overcome them, for he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.

☐ Malachi 3:10. 10 Bring the full tithe into the storehouse, that there may be food in my house. And thereby put me to the test, says the Lord of hosts, if I will not open the windows of heaven for you and pour down for you a blessing until there is no more need.
Chapter 10

What do I Need to Know about Stewardship?

Memorize Malachi 3:10

Malachi 3:10. Bring the full tithe into the storehouse, that there may be food in my house. And thereby put me to the test, says the LORD of hosts, if I will not open the windows of heaven for you and pour down for you a blessing until there is no more need.

Note to the discipler: Because this particular lesson is short, try to go on an evangelistic visit with the person you are discipling this week. Have them share their testimony and present the Romans Road (or another gospel presentation) to an unbeliever.

What Is Stewardship?
A steward is someone who takes care of something for someone else. Stewardship is taking care of what God has given us and using it in a way that is obedient to Him.

Read Deut. 8:18 You shall remember the LORD your God, for it is he who gives you power to get wealth, that he may confirm his covenant that he swore to your fathers, as it is this day.

Read 1 Chronicles 29:14. “But who am I, and what is my people, that we should be able thus to offer willingly? For all things come from you, and of your own have we given you.

What things do we own that have been given to us by God? What things do we own that do NOT come from God?

From the verses above we can see that there is nothing we possess that was not given to us by God. The ability to work and earn money comes from Him, and everything we own is a gift from Him. It is important to recognize that we do not actually own our possessions, because everything in the world belongs to God. We are simply stewards (i.e. caretakers) of the things God has allowed us to have.

Sometimes Christians see some of their possessions as coming from God, but see other of their possessions as coming from their own hard work. If a stranger came up to you on the street and gave you a CD player, it would be easy to believe that this was a gift from God. If someone in the church needed to use it for a church program, you might cheerfully loan it, because it was “God’s CD player.” But if you worked hard for months and saved up your money little by little until you finally had enough to buy a new CD player, would you recognize this as “God’s CD player”? Would you be just as willing to cheerfully loan it to the church, or would you see this CD player as “ours”?

The verses that you looked up earlier show that in God’s eyes both of the CD players belong to Him, and were gifts to you. No matter how you got the things you possess, they are God’s, and He has given them to you to take care of in a manner that pleases Him. Taking proper care of the gifts God has given you is “good stewardship.”

What Are The Right Attitudes Toward Money?
A very important part of being a good steward is being wise in the way you handle your money. The Bible makes over 700 direct references to money and over 300 indirect references to money -- 1,000 references in all! It is also interesting that 12 of the 38 parables that Jesus told dealt with the issue of money.
It is clear that the way we spend our money and our attitude toward wealth is important to God. What does the Bible say about the proper attitudes and spending habits of a Christian? Let us begin with looking at what our attitude toward wealth should be. We have already seen that all of our wealth comes from God.

Another verse that supports this is Haggai 2:8 which says, “The silver is mine and the gold is mine,’ declares the LORD Almighty.” In our attitude toward our money, we need to always be aware that our money is truly God’s money.

Read Heb. 13:5. Keep your life free from love of money, and be content with what you have, for he has said, “I will never leave you nor forsake you.”

Read 1 Tim. 6:10. For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evils. It is through this craving that some have wandered away from the faith and pierced themselves with many pangs.

How should we not feel about our money? (Heb 13:5, 1 Tim 6:10)

The verses above do not say that having money is sinful -- but they do say that loving money is sinful. A person loves money when he or she spends a lot of time thinking and worrying about how much money one has and how one can become wealthier and buy more things. If having a lot of money is very important to you, and if you are not generous, but struggle with giving away your money, then you need to examine your heart as you may be guilty of the sin of loving money.

In Matthew 6:21, Jesus says a very powerful statement regarding our treasure and our hearts. In the Greek, it is future tense and so we should translate the verse as, “For where your treasure is, there your heart WILL BE also.” (The New International Version rightly translates it this way). This is an extremely important principle in that it is the key that unlocks the door to cheerful giving. Rather than wait until we feel cheerful (for our hearts to be in it), Jesus is teaching us the principle of feelings follow actions. If we want our hearts to be in it, we don’t wait until we feel like it, we do it, and then we’ll feel like it. A simply way to phrase it would be “emotion follows motion.”

Read Matthew 6:19-21. “Do not lay up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy and where thieves break in and steal, but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys and where thieves do not break in and steal. For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

Where does God say we should store up treasure? How do you think we can do that?

Three Aspects of Stewardship
As was said earlier, there are over 1,000 references to money in the Bible. All of those references could be summarized in these three words: Work, Save and Give.

1) Work
Work itself is to be seen as a gift from God. Adam and Eve worked in the garden even before the curse! God will not drop what we need from heaven into our lap while we sit and do nothing; rather, He expects us to work diligently in order to earn money to supply the needs of ourselves and our families. Then as we are diligent in our work, God will bless our efforts. Look up the following verses and write out what they say about the importance of working:

Prov. 6:6-11. Go to the ant, O sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise. Without having any chief, officer, or ruler, she prepares her bread in summer and gathers her food in harvest. How long will you lie there, O sluggard? When will you arise from your sleep? A little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to rest, and poverty will come upon you like a robber, and want like an armed man.
Prov. 13:4  
The soul of the sluggard craves and gets nothing, while the soul of the diligent is richly supplied.

Prov. 14:23.  21 In all toil there is profit, but mere talk tends only to poverty.

Prov. 20:4.  4 The sluggard does not plow in the autumn; he will seek at harvest and have nothing.

Col. 3:23-24.  20 Whatever you do, work heartily, as for the Lord and not for men, 21 knowing that from the Lord you will receive the inheritance as your reward. You are serving the Lord Christ.

2 Thess. 3:10.  10 For even when we were with you, we would give you this command: If anyone is not willing to work, let him not eat.

The Bible teaches that money is made through hard work. Proverbs 31 tells us about a woman who “sets about her work vigorously,” who “rises while it is still dark,” whose “lamp does not go out at night” and who “does not eat the bread of idleness.” We are told that this woman “shall be praised” (Prov 31:30). God wants us to be hard working and industrious like this woman. This is part of being a good steward.

Proverbs 31: 15-29: 15 She rises while it is yet night and provides food for her household and portions for her maidens. 16 She considers a field and buys it; with the fruit of her hands she plants a vineyard. 17 She dresses herself with strength and makes her arms strong. 18 She perceives that her merchandise is profitable. Her lamp does not go out at night. 19 She puts her hands to the distaff, and her hands hold the spindle. 20 She opens her hand to the poor and reaches out her hands to the needy. 21 She is not afraid of snow for her household, for all her household are clothed in scarlet. 22 She makes bed coverings for herself; her clothing is fine linen and purple. 23 Her husband is known in the gates when he sits among the elders of the land. 24 She makes linen garments and sells them; she delivers sashes to the merchant. 25 Strength and dignity are her clothing, and she laughs at the time to come. 26 She opens her mouth with wisdom, and the teaching of kindness is on her tongue. 27 She looks well to the ways of her household and does not eat the bread of idleness. 28 Her children rise up and call her blessed; her husband also, and he praises her: 29 “Many women have done excellently, but you surpass them all.”

There is a story about a maid who was asked to sweep the house. In one of the rooms there was a large bed in the corner. She moved the entire bed and swept the area no one could see. A friend asked her, “Why do you sweep the areas that no one sees?” The young girl answered, “Because Jesus can see this area. I am sweeping this area not for anyone else -- just for Jesus.” She was cleaning under the bed not for the praise of other people, but just because she wanted to be a diligent worker in the eyes of Jesus. When was the last time you did something just for Jesus?

Even if we do not have a job, we should diligently work at trying to find a job, and at doing such things as we are able in order to meet our needs. We should not simply sit idle. Some people refuse to work rather than take a job that they feel is “beneath their dignity.” This is not right. Some people think that they can get money by buying lottery tickets, but this is NOT a legitimate way to make money. In order to practice good stewardship, we must first be willing to work hard for the things we need.

2) Save

Another important aspect of being a good steward is saving wisely for the future. In Proverbs 6:6-11 and in Proverbs 30:25, God uses the simple ant as an example for us. Read these verses.

Prov. 6:6-11.  6 Go to the ant, O sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise. 7 Without having any chief, officer, or ruler, 8 she prepares her bread in summer and gathers her food in harvest. 9 How long will you lie there, O
sluggard? When will you arise from your sleep? A little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to rest, and poverty will come upon you like a robber, and want like an armed man.

Proverbs 30:24-25 Four things on earth are small, but they are exceedingly wise: the ants are a people not strong, yet they provide their food in the summer;

After reading the verses, write down the principles that can be learned about saving: 

____________________________________________________

God says that the ant that saves is “wise” (Prov 30:24). God wants us to also be wise and develop good saving habits. We shouldn’t spend all that we have as soon as we get it, without thinking of the future. While God does not want us to hoard our wealth, He does want us to be wise and to save what we need for the future. Consider Joseph, who advised Pharaoh to set aside some of the harvest in good years in preparation for the coming famine. If we never save any money, we will be less likely to have the opportunity to improve our situation in life. In addition, if we do not save we will not be prepared if difficult times come, such as loss of work or health problems. It is good stewardship to save money each month so that you can be prepared for the future.

Another reason to save money is so that we can help our children. Proverbs 13:22 says, “A good man leaves an inheritance for his children's children.” Yet another important reason to save is so that we can help the poor. Deuteronomy 15:11 says, “There will always be poor people in the land. Therefore I command you to be openhanded toward your brothers and toward the poor and needy in your land.” If we don’t save our money, we will not have extra money to help those in need.

Remember that saving does not mean hoarding. Saving means wisely putting aside a certain amount so that you will have it for future needs. Hoarding is saving more than you need because of a love for possessions and money. Ecclesiastes 5:13 says, “I have seen a grievous evil under the sun: wealth hoarded to the harm of its owner.” Hoarding money with the wrong attitude is harmful, but saving money with the right attitude is wise.

How are you in the area of saving? Do you have a saving plan -- do you faithfully save at least a small amount of money each month? It is wise to try to save at least 5-10% of your income every month. Write out below what your current method of saving is, and any new goals you feel the Lord is leading you to set.

__________________________________________________

3) Give to God through His Church

God wants us to have the right attitude about money. Our desire to have money and possessions should never be greater than our desire to please God and live in obedience to Him. God wants us to work for our money, to save it wisely, and then use our money not simply to make our own life better, but to enable the church to help physically needy and spiritually needy people in this world. An important part of living the Christian life and practicing good stewardship is giving faithfully to the Lord’s work. God’s Word gives us some principles to follow as we give to the Lord’s work:

a. We should always give God the best of what we have. Read Malachi 1:6-14. “A son honors his father, and a servant his master. If then I am a father, where is my honor? And if I am a master, where is my fear? says the Lord of hosts to you, O priests, who despise my name. But you say, ‘How have we despised your name?’ By offering polluted food upon my altar. But you say, ‘How have we polluted you?’ By saying that the Lord's table may be despised. When you offer blind animals in sacrifice, is that not evil? And when you offer those that are lame or sick, is that not evil? Present that to your governor; will he accept you or show
you favor? says the Lord of hosts. 9 And now entreat the favor of God, that he may be gracious to us. With such a gift from your hand, will he show favor to any of you? says the Lord of hosts. 10 Oh that there were one among you who would shut the doors, that you might not kindle fire on my altar in vain! I have no pleasure in you, says the Lord of hosts, and I will not accept an offering from your hand. 11 For from the rising of the sun to its setting my name will be great among the nations, and in every place incense will be offered to my name, and a pure offering. For my name will be great among the nations, says the Lord of hosts.

What kind of lambs were the people bringing for their sacrifice? __________________________

What was God’s response to their offering? __________________________

If you had an important guest come to your house for dinner, would you give him the very best meal you could make, or would you give him the leftover food you were going to give the dog? Of course you would not want to dishonor him by giving him the leftover scraps. In the same way, we must not dishonor God by giving only our leftover, unneeded portion of an offering to Him. We must show our love and worship by giving God our best, not our leftover spare change.

b. We need to give God our full tithe: Read Malachi 3:7-10. 7 From the days of your fathers you have turned aside from my statutes and have not kept them. Return to me, and I will return to you, says the Lord of hosts. But you say, ‘How shall we return?’ 8 Will man rob God? Yet you are robbing me. But you say, ‘How have we robbed you?’ In your tithes and contributions. 9 You are cursed with a curse, for you are robbing me, the whole nation of you. 10 Bring the full tithe into the storehouse, that there may be food in my house. And thereby put me to the test, says the Lord of hosts, if I will not open the windows of heaven for you and pour down for you a blessing until there is no more need.

How do we rob God? ____________________________________________

What amazing blessing does God promise if we give Him our full tithe? ________________

We must understand that God’s blessings may not necessarily be financial. For example, His blessing might be that your children grow up to marry very godly spouses who deeply love Christ.

In addition, many of the blessings that God promises for our obedience may not be received in this world. Many of His blessings will be reserved for that wonderful time when we are in heaven in the presence of God. Although we do not know when and how God will bless us, we can be certain that He will bless us richly according to the promises in His Word. These verses in Malachi (and a number of other verses in the Bible) give us God’s promise that if we faithfully give Him our full tithe, He will
faithfully bless us.

What is a "tithe"? It comes from a Hebrew word which means “one-tenth.” See Leviticus 27:32 where every tenth possession was given to the Lord. Thus, a tithe is 10 percent of our income, given to the church in which we are worshiping and serving.

Giving a tenth to God was recognized as a duty, and was an important part of the Jewish religious worship. Jacob vowed to give his tithe to the Lord when he said, “Of all that you shall give me I will surely give the tenth unto you” (Gen. 28:22). In the days of Hezekiah one of the first results of the reformation of religion was the eagerness with which the people brought in their tithes (2 Chronicles 31:5, 6). The neglect of this duty was sternly rebuked by the prophets (Amos 4:4; Malachi 3:8-10).

The Old Testament clearly taught the giving of three tithes:

1) The first 10% was to be given to support the religious leaders and the local place of worship (see Lev. 27:30-33, Numbers 18:21 and Deut. 12:5-18).

2) The second 10% was like a tax (see Deut. 14:22-27).

Deut. 14:22-27. 22 “You shall tithe all the yield of your seed that comes from the field year by year. 23 And before the Lord your God, in the place that he will choose, to make his name dwell there, you shall eat the tithe of your grain, of your wine, and of your oil, and the firstborn of your herd and flock, that you may
learn to fear the Lord your God always. 24 And if the way is too long for you, so that you are not able to carry the tithe, when the Lord your God blesses you, because the place is too far from you, which the Lord your God chooses, to set his name there, 25 then you shall turn it into money and bind up the money in your hand and go to the place that the Lord your God chooses 26 and spend the money for whatever you desire—oxen or sheep or wine or strong drink, whatever your appetite craves. And you shall eat there before the Lord your God and rejoice, you and your household. 27 And you shall not neglect the Levite who is within your towns, for he has no portion or inheritance with you.

3) The third 10% was given every third year to help the poor of the land (Deut. 14:28-29). Thus, this third tithe equaled 3.3% a year.

Deut. 14:28-29. 28 “At the end of every three years you shall bring out all the tithe of your produce in the same year and lay it up within your towns. 29 And the Levite, because he has no portion or inheritance with you, and the sojourner, the fatherless, and the widow, who are within your towns, shall come and eat and be filled, that the Lord your God may bless you in all the work of your hands that you do.

These tithes averaged 23.3% a year. After giving those 3 tithes, every person was to say before the Lord, "I have removed from my house the sacred portion and have given it to the Levite, the alien, the fatherless and the widow, according to all you commanded. I have not turned aside from your commands nor have I forgotten any of them" (Deut. 26:13-14). Could you or I say that? Have we robbed God? Are we thieves? Or have we been faithful in giving our full tithe to the Lord?

In considering what a New Testament Christian should give, perhaps the following guidelines will be helpful:

**Old Testament**
First tithe - 10% goes to place of worship
Second tithe - goes to government
Third tithe - goes to help the poor

**New Testament**
Our tithe - 10% goes to our place of worship.
Christians should pay taxes (Romans 13:7-8).
Christians should give to the poor (Romans 15:26).

Romans 13:7-8. 7 Pay to all what is owed to them: taxes to whom taxes are owed, revenue to whom revenue is owed, respect to whom respect is owed, honor to whom honor is owed. 8 Owe no one anything, except to love each other, for the one who loves another has fulfilled the law.

Romans 15:26. 26 For Macedonia and Achaia have been pleased to make some contribution for the poor among the saints at Jerusalem.

When you read through Deuteronomy 28, it is clear that God blesses those who are faithful in giving their full tithes to Him, and God curses those who are not faithful in this area. As mentioned earlier, it is important to keep in mind that God’s blessings are not always in this world -- very often God’s blessings are in the world to come (in heaven).

**c. We need to have the right attitude as we give to God.**

In addition to instructing us to give our tithe to God, the Bible also tells us what our attitude toward giving should be. In 2 Corinthians 9:7, we are told that we should “not give reluctantly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver.” God wants us to give willingly and with gladness, not resentfully.

Along with having a cheerful attitude, God wants us to be willing to give sacrificially -- to give beyond what we think we can afford. He wants us to be willing to make sacrifices in our own lives so that we can help others and further God’s kingdom on earth.

In 2 Cor. 8:1-9 we see a very good example of giving sacrificially. Read the verses and answer these questions:
2 Cor. 8: 1-9. We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given among the churches of Macedonia, 2 for in a severe test of affliction, their abundance of joy and their extreme poverty have overflowed in a wealth of generosity on their part. 3 For they gave according to their means, as I can testify, and beyond their means, of their own accord, 4 begging us earnestly for the favor of taking part in the relief of the saints— 5 and this, not as we expected, but they gave themselves first to the Lord and then by the will of God to us. 6 Accordingly, we urged Titus that as he had started, so he should complete among you this act of grace. 7 But as you excel in everything—in faith, in speech, in knowledge, in all earnestness, and in our love for you—see that you excel in this act of grace also. 8 I say this not as a command, but to prove by the earnestness of others that your love also is genuine. 9 For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that though he was rich, yet for your sake he became poor, so that you by his poverty might become rich.

How did the church of Macedonia give? (vs. 3) __________________________________________________________________________

What are we told to excel in? (vs. 7) __________________________________________________________________________

Are You Pleasing God In Your Giving?
How are you doing in the area of giving? In the space below, write down your income for each month. Then write down how much you give to your church each month. Be careful to be accurate. Now figure out what percentage of your income you are giving to God. Is it 10% (or more)? If so, then you are being obedient to God, and will receive His promised blessings (either in this world or in heaven). If not, you are disobeying God’s commands. Ask God to forgive you and begin this week to be obedient to the Word of God in the area of tithing and stewardship.

Your monthly income: __________ Your monthly giving to your church: __________

Percentage of your income that you are giving to God’s church:

Note: Any giving that goes to other Christian causes such as missionary support, special ministries, etc. should be after you have given 10% to your local church.

Are you giving sacrificially? __________ Are you giving cheerfully? __________

What changes (if any) do you need to make in your life? __________________________________________________________________________

Write out Luke 6:38: __________________________________________________________________________

Luke 6:38. 38 give, and it will be given to you. Good measure, pressed down, shaken together, running over, will be put into your lap. For with the measure you use it will be measured back to you.”

Devotional Thought:
Deuteronomy 8:17-18 says, “You may say to yourself, ‘My power and the strength of my hands have produced this wealth for me.’ But remember the LORD your God, for it is he who gives you the ability to produce wealth, and so confirms his covenant.” Spend some time right now in prayer thanking God for the ability to go to work and gain a paycheck. Ask Him for His wisdom in practicing good stewardship. Ask Him to search your heart and make sure that you have the right attitude toward money, that you are working hard, saving wisely, sharing generously, and that you are cheerfully, sacrificially and consistently giving God your full tithe.
Assignment for Chapter 11

Why is Obedience Important?
What Should I Know About Baptism and Lord’s Supper?

NOTE: Complete and check each of the following assignments before you on to chapter 12:

Study and complete the material for chapter 11.
Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 11 with the person who is discipling you.
Memorize Ephesians 5:8-10, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.
Review the memory verses from previous weeks, and review the names of all the books of the New Testament and Old Testament.

☐ John 3:16-17. 16 “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life. 17 For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the world might be saved through him.

☐ 1 John 5:12-13. 12 Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life. 13 I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God that you may know that you have eternal life.

☐ Exodus 15:11. 11 “Who is like you, O LORD, among the gods? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, awesome in glorious deeds, doing wonders

☐ Psalm 119:9-11. 9 How can a young man keep his way pure? By guarding it according to your word. 10 With my whole heart I seek you; let me not wander from your commandments! 11 I have stored up your word in my heart, that I might not sin against you.

☐ 1 John 5:14. 14 And this is the confidence that we have toward him, that if we ask anything according to his will he hears us.

☐ Mathew 28:18-20. 18 And Jesus came and said to them, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19 Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.”

☐ Colossians 3:12-14. 12 Put on then, as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved, compassionate hearts, kindness, humility, meekness, and patience, 13 bearing with one another and, if one has a complaint against another, forgiving each other; as the Lord has forgiven you, so you also must forgive. 14 And above all these put on love, which binds everything together in perfect harmony.

☐ Galatians 5:22-23. 22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, 23 gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law.

☐ Luke 10:19. 19 Behold, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall hurt you.

☐ 1 John 4:4. 4 Little children, you are from God and have overcome them, for he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.

☐ Malachi 3:10. 10 Bring the full tithe into the storehouse, that there may be food in my house. And thereby put me to the test, says the Lord of hosts, if I will not open the windows of heaven for you and pour down for you a blessing until there is no more need.

☐ Ephesians 5:8-10. for at one time you were darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light 9 (for the fruit of light is found in all that is good and right and true), 10 and try to discern what is pleasing to the Lord.
Chapter 11

Why is Obedience Important?
What Should I Know About Baptism and Lord’s Supper?

Memorize Ephesians 5:8-10

Ephesians 5:8-10 for at one time you were darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light (for the fruit of light is found in all that is good and right and true), and try to discern what is pleasing to the Lord.

Do You Truly Love Jesus?

As we begin this lesson on obedience, there is a question you must consider: Do you love Jesus? Jesus died a horrible death to pay the price for your sins, and through His blood He provided the way for you to have a relationship with God. Jesus loves you deeply, prays daily for you, comforts and strengthens you, understands your hurts, helps you when you are tempted, and provides for your needs. Do you love Jesus? Your actions will show if you truly love Jesus.

Read John 14:15 and 14:21. What will you do if you truly love Jesus?

John 14:15  If you love me, you will keep my commandments.
John 14:21  Whoever has my commandments and keeps them, he it is who loves me. And he who loves me will be loved by my Father, and I will love him and manifest myself to him.

Obedience to God’s commands is a very important part of the Christian life. A true follower of Christ will strive to be a person of integrity and holiness, making a daily decision to live an obedient and Christ-like life.

Read 1 John 2:3-4 (And by this we know that we have come to know him, if we keep his commandments. Whoever says “I know him” but does not keep his commandments is a liar, and the truth is not in him)

a. What does obeying the Word of God prove? _____________________________________________

b. What does disobeying the Word of God prove? ___________________________________________

The Nature of a Christian

When you became a Christian, a wonderful thing happened. Read 2 Corinthians 5:17 (Therefore, if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. The old has passed away; behold, the new has come) and write what that was.

When you became a Christian, you were made into a new creation. The old has gone, and the new has come! Read Ephesians 4:22-24 and write the difference between the old self and the new self.

Ephesians 4:22-24 to put off your old self, which belongs to your former manner of life and is corrupt through deceitful desires, and to be renewed in the spirit of your minds, and to put on the new self, created after the likeness of God in true righteousness and holiness.

Old Self _____________________________________________
The Bible also tells us that when we became Christians we moved from "darkness into light". Read 1 Peter 2:9 (But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for his own possession, that you may proclaim the excellencies of him who called you out of darkness into his marvelous light.) and write down (1) all the things that this verse tells us about who we are as Christians, and (2) what God did for us:

(1) ____________________________________________________________

(2) ____________________________________________________________

Read 1 Thessalonians 5:5 and Ephesians 5:8. What are Christians called in these verses?

1 Thessalonians 5:5 For you are all children of light, children of the day. We are not of the night or of the darkness.
Ephesians 5:8 for at one time you were darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light

The verses you just read are exciting verses! We are new creations! We have a new nature! We are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people belonging to God, children of the light!

Why Should I Obey?

Why should Christians obey the instructions in the Word of God? Do we obey so that we will be loved and accepted by God? The answer to that question is “No!” Do we obey so that we can go to heaven? Again, the answer to that question is “No!”

It is very important that we understand that our obedience is not what allows us to go to heaven or makes us acceptable to God. We are not saved by what we do. Our salvation is based simply upon God's grace to us in the gift of His Son, Jesus, who died to pay the price for our sins. We will go to heaven only if we have put our faith in Jesus, and have received Him into our lives. It is because of Jesus Christ that we are accepted and loved by God. Nothing we do can make God love us any more or any less. We are His precious children, and we are holy in His sight, simply because of the blood of Jesus which has cleansed us. There are two main reasons that we should obey God:

1) Since we are new creations and are children of a King, we should live according to who we are.
1 Peter 2:9-10 But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for his own possession, that you may proclaim the excellencies of him who called you out of darkness into his marvelous light. 10 Once you were not a people, but now you are God's people; once you had not received mercy, but now you have received mercy.

2) Because we love God, and are grateful to Him for what He has done, we should do the things that please Him. Although nothing we do will make God accept us (remember, we are accepted simply because of what Jesus has done), we can do things which please or displease God. (For verses that show that it is possible for Christians to please or displease God, see 1 Kings 3:10, 1 Chronicles 29:17, Psalm 19:14, Ephesians 5:8-10, Colossians 1:10, 1 Thessalonians 4:1, Hebrews 13:16.)

1 Kings 3:10. It pleased the Lord that Solomon had asked this.

1 Chronicles 29:17. I know, my God, that you test the heart and have pleasure in uprightness. In the uprightness of my heart I have freely offered all these things, and now I have seen your people, who are present here, offering freely and joyously to you.
Psalm 19:14. Let the words of my mouth and the meditations of my heart be acceptable in your sight O LORD, my rock and my redeemer.
Ephesians 5:8-10. “for at one time you were darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light ⁹ (for the fruit of light is found in all that is good and right and true), ¹⁰ and try to discern what is pleasing to the Lord.

Colossians 1:10. so as to walk in a manner worthy of the Lord, fully pleasing to him, bearing fruit in every good work and increasing in the knowledge of God.

1 Thessalonians 4:1. Finally, then, brothers, we ask and urge you in the Lord Jesus, that as you received from us how you ought to walk and to please God, just as you are doing, that you do so more and more.

Hebrews 13:16. Do not neglect to do good and to share what you have, for such sacrifices are pleasing to God.

If a child does something wrong, his parents may be displeased with her, but they don’t stop loving her. Her disobedience does not mean that she is no longer their child. In the same way, we can please or displease God by our actions, but we are still His children and we are still loved and accepted by God.

**Living According to Who We Are**

*No one can consistently live in a manner that is inconsistent with how he perceives himself.* If we perceive ourselves as new creations in Christ, then our obedience will be an overflow of that perception. We need to live our Christian lives according to who we are -- according to our new nature. If we claim to have a relationship with God through Jesus, we must demonstrate that through our obedience to Him.

Read 1 John 2:6. (whoever says he abides in him ought to walk in the same way in which he walked.) If we claim to be Christians, what must we do? __________________________

__________________________________________________________

Read 1 Peter 1:14-16. (“As obedient children, do not be conformed to the passions of your former ignorance, ¹⁵ but as he who called you is holy, you also be holy in all your conduct, ¹⁶ since it is written, “You shall be holy, for I am holy.”). According to verses 15-16, if we are obedient children, what should we do? __________________________

__________________________________________________________

According to verses 14, what we **not** do? __________________________

__________________________________________________________

Read Ephesians 5:8-11. (²⁴ for at one time you were darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light ⁹ (for the fruit of light is found in all that is good and right and true), ¹⁰ and try to discern what is pleasing to the Lord. ¹¹ Take no part in the unfruitful works of darkness, but instead expose them.)

How should "children of light” walk and live? __________________________

__________________________________________________________

Obeying God doesn’t just mean that we should go to church and try to avoid big sins like murder, stealing, and adultery. Rather, obeying God means that in every choice we are faced with, big or small, we must choose to follow the guidelines given in God’s Word. Every time we experience temptation - even in a small thing - we need to choose to live and act according to our new nature.

The story is told of a group of Christians who one day made a commitment to each other that from that moment on, every time they were faced with a decision they would ask themselves, “What would Jesus do?” Each of these Christians found that as they kept their commitment, their lives changed dramatically. Every time they were tempted to gossip or say something unkind, they would ask themselves, “What would Jesus do?” Every time they had to make a business decision, they would ask themselves, “What would Jesus do?” Every time they were struggling with relationships with other people they would ask, “What would Jesus do?” Every time they didn’t feel like working hard, they would ask, “What would Jesus do?” Every time they were faced with an opportunity to help someone, they would ask, “What would Jesus do?”
As Christians, this is the way we should all live. Obedience means living as Jesus lived, and walking as Jesus walked. Obedience means living day by day, moment by moment, as “children of the light.” Obedience means regularly asking ourselves throughout each day, “What would Jesus do?”

Obedience means that we must submit ourselves to the will of God in every area of our life. Are you doing this? Think about the different areas of your life, and ask yourself if you are truly living as a child of the light in each area. Discuss each of these areas with the person who is discipling you. Circle any areas of disobedience where you need to make changes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OK Needs works</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>____ ____</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember that for God, there is no such thing as a “small” or “insignificant” sin. There is no sin that “doesn’t really matter.” Every sin we commit grieves the heart of God. And remember too, that if we allow Satan to win in what may seem to be a small area, it can lead to big problems in our life. Ephesians 4:27 says, “Do not give the devil a foothold.”

What kinds of "small" areas of disobedience in your life might give the devil a foothold? ____________________________

___________________________________________________________________________________

Ask God’s forgiveness for these “small” sins, and ask Him to help you be obedient in even these seemingly “small” things. For the areas you checked above that needed work, please revisit page 28 on dealing with temptation, and work with your discipler to come up with some action plans to deal with these areas. For example, if you’ve sinned by looking at impure websites, an action step might be to install the product “Be Safe On Line” or some other safeguard.

Be sure not to make any excuses for sin by "justifying them with excuses" (rationalizing).

Remember: When people rationalize their sins, they make up "rational lies"!

Devotional Thought
Suppose that somehow you sinned only 3 times a day. Imagine that only 3 times a day you failed to love God with all your heart and failed to love your neighbor as yourself. Even if you were this good, you would still have over 1,000 sins a year! Multiply that by your age and you will 20, 30, 40, 50 thousand violations of the Law of God on your record! Think what would happen to a habitual offender in a criminal court with that many violations!
This is why we should “preach the Gospel to ourselves” everyday. What is the Gospel? The gospel teaches us that we are more sinful than we could ever imagine, and yet at the same time, we can be more accepted and loved than we could ever imagine because Jesus Christ has lived and died in our place. Take a moment now to thank God for His forgiveness and grace and ask for help in loving Him and others the way we should.

**Others Are Watching Your Obedience**

The Bible reminds us that people around us are watching to see how we act, what we say, how we think, etc. Unbelievers watch us to see if our behavior really matches up to our beliefs. Read the following verses and answer the questions:

Read Philippians 2:15. (that you may be blameless and innocent, children of God without blemish in the midst of a crooked and twisted generation, among whom you shine as lights in the world). How should we appear in the middle of this evil world?  

__________

__________________________

Read Titus 2:7-8. (\(^1\)Show yourself in all respects to be a model of good works, and in your teaching show integrity, dignity, \(^8\) and sound speech that cannot be condemned, so that an opponent may be put to shame, having nothing evil to say about us.) How should we live in order that nothing bad can be said about us?  

__________

__________________________

Read 1 Peter 2:12, “Keep your conduct among the Gentiles honorable, so that when they speak against you as evildoers, they may see your good deeds and glorify God on the day of visitation.” What will be the result among unbelievers if we are obedient to God?  

__________

__________________________

Remember that you may be the only message from God that others see. Live as a child of the light, so that those who do not know Jesus may see Him through you. Acts 26: 17-18 says, "I am sending you to unbelievers to open their eyes and turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan to God."  

It is also important to remember that other Christians are watching our example of obedience to Christ. If we disobey God, we might cause another believer to follow our example of disobedience. Read Matthew 18:6 (but whoever causes one of these little ones who believe in me to sin, it would be better for him to have a great millstone fastened around his neck and to be drowned in the depth of the sea.). What did Jesus say about the person who causes another believer to disobey?  

__________

__________________________

Are there areas of your life where you might be causing (or may have caused) other believers to disobey God?  

__________

__________________________

**What Should I Do When I Disobey?**

God desires that we do not sin, but He knows that we are not yet capable of being completely holy and perfect. What does 1 John 2:1-2 (‘My little children, I am writing these things to you so that you may not sin. But if...')?
anyone does sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous. He is the propitiation for our sins, and not for ours only but also for the sins of the whole world.) teach us about God's provision when we disobey? __________________________

What does 1 John 1:9 (“If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.”) tell us to do when we sin? __________________________

What does 1 John 1:9 say that God will do? __________________________

Two Important Areas In Which We Must Obey God
The rest of this lesson will discuss two important areas in our Christian lives in which we must be obedient to God - baptism and the Lord’s Supper. Both baptism and the Lord’s Supper were introduced when Jesus came to earth, and Jesus has commanded that all believers should participate in them.

What Is Baptism?
Before we discuss what baptism is, we need to discuss what baptism is not. Some churches teach that baptism takes away sin, and that a person is not saved until they have been baptized. This teaching is not biblical. Baptism does not give a person salvation, and does not take away sins. We are saved simply by putting our faith in Jesus alone and receiving Him into our lives (see chapters 1 and 2 of this manual). It is by the grace of God and the actions of Jesus that we are saved, not by anything that we do. The Bible does not teach that baptism takes away sin or is necessary for salvation.

CHRISTIAN BAPTISM
In the first century, Jesus Christ commanded His followers to "...Go... and make disciples of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Spirit..." (Matthew 28:19-20). Since that time, the great majority of confessing Christians have baptized not only adults who profess Christ as Lord and Savior, but their infant children as well. In fact, almost one half of all the baptisms recorded in the New Testament book of Acts are "household baptisms" (Acts 16:15, 32-33; 18:8; I Cor. 1:16; Acts 11:14). It is undoubtedly true that most Christians, if one takes into account all the centuries of Christian history, have been baptized in infancy. Within one hundred years of the time of the Apostles, the writings of Origen (185-254 A.D.) recorded that "Little children are baptized agreeable to the usage of the Church; who received it from the Apostles, that this ordinance should be administered to infants." In order to understand the biblical basis of infant baptism one must first understand that God's plan of salvation is essentially the same in all ages and has always been accompanied by God-given signs of the covenant.

Acts 16:15. 15 And after she was baptized, and her household as well, she urged us, saying, “If you have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, come to my house and stay.” And she prevailed upon us.

Acts 16:32-33. 32 And they spoke the word of the Lord to him and to all who were in his house. 33 And he took them the same hour of the night and washed their wounds; and he was baptized at once, he and all his family.

Acts 18:8. 8 Crispus, the ruler of the synagogue, believed in the Lord, together with his entire household. And many of the Corinthians hearing Paul believed and were baptized.

1 Cor. 1:17. 17 For Christ did not send me to baptize but to preach the gospel, and not with words of eloquent wisdom, lest the cross of Christ be emptied of its power.

Acts 11:14. 14 he will declare to you a message by which you will be saved, you and all your household.’
CIRCUMCISION: THE OLD TESTAMENT COVENANT SIGN

In the Old Testament, God established the practice of applying the Old Testament sign of the covenant (circumcision) not only to adults after they believed, but also to their infant children before they believed. This practice was carried out by God's people for almost 2000 years before the time of Christ (Gen. 17:7, “And I will establish my covenant between me and you and your offspring after you throughout their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be God to you and to your offspring after you.”). The application of the Old Testament covenant sign to infant children of believers did not mean that the child was somehow saved by that sign (Rom. 4:11). Each child still had to come to personal salvation by grace through faith in the promised Christ to come. But God still commanded that this covenant sign be applied to the infants of believers as a sign of their being set apart from the world and numbered among God's covenant people.

This external sign was also given as a sign of spiritual cleansing in anticipation of the internal purification of sin that comes only by grace through faith. In the Old Testament times this internal purification was called the "circumcision of the heart" (Deut. 30:6). By the application of the covenant sign, these children were formally set apart from the world and placed into the covenant community of God's people where the child was to be exposed to all the means of God's grace through which he might be brought to personal salvation. Although all the infants who received the external covenant sign did receive the outward blessings that resulted from being in God's covenant community, all did not necessarily receive the internal blessings of personal salvation (Rom. 9:10-13). And not only so, but also when Rebekah had conceived children by one man, our forefather Isaac, though they were not yet born and had done nothing either good or bad—in order that God's purpose of election might continue, not because of works but because of him who calls—she was told, “The older will serve the younger.” As it is written, “Jacob I loved, but Esau I hated.”

BAPTISM: THE NEW TESTAMENT COVENANT SIGN

In the New Testament Church, we are still under God's unfolding covenant of grace. Rather than being saved by grace through faith in a Christ to come we are now saved by grace through faith in the historic Christ who has come (Eph. 2:8-9). For by grace you have been saved through faith. And this is not your own doing; it is the gift of God, not a result of works, so that no one may boast.). God has replaced the old covenant signs with new covenant signs. No longer are God's people to observe the Passover feast, but instead God has replaced that with the sacrament of the Lord's Supper (Matt. 26:26-29). Now as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and after blessing it broke it and gave it to the disciples, and said, “Take, eat; this is my body.” And he took a cup, and when he had given thanks he gave it to them, saying, “Drink of it, all of you, for this is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins. I tell you I will not drink again of this fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom.”)

No longer are God's people to observe the rite of circumcision, but instead God has replaced that with the sacrament of water baptism (Matt. 28:19, Col. 2:11, 12). The covenant sign once made available for only one gender (male) and one nation (Israel) is now made available to both male and female among all nations and peoples of the world (Gal. 3:28). Therefore, this new covenant sign of baptism carries with it the essential meaning of the Old Testament sign of circumcision.

Matt. 28:19. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit,

Col. 2:11-12. In him also you were circumcised with a circumcision made without hands, by putting off the body of the flesh, by the circumcision of Christ, having been buried with him in baptism, in which you were also raised with him through faith in the powerful working of God, who raised him from the dead.

Gal. 3:28. There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is no male and female, for you are all one in Christ Jesus.

A SIGN OF ADMISSION

This means that baptism is to be applied not only to adults after they believe, but also to their infant children.
before they believe as a **sign of admission into God's present covenant community**, the church. Such people are then formally set apart from the world and numbered among God's people by receiving the new covenant sign. As it regards the children of believers, the Apostle Paul taught that the child of even one believing parent was "Holy" i.e. set apart unto God (1 Cor. 7:14). Therefore at baptism, the infant is received into the church as a "non-communing" member, i.e. one who does not commune (receive the sacrament of the Lord's Supper) until he comes to receive Christ personally and take the church membership vows.

**A SIGN OF PURIFICATION AND UNION WITH CHRIST**

We come into the world not prepared to leave the world. We need to be purified from sin and we need a Savior, Jesus Christ. Water baptism is also an **outward symbol of the inward work of purification from sin** and union with Christ in His death, burial and resurrection (Rom. 6:3-4) which results from the work of God's Holy Spirit in the lives of all who come to saving faith in Christ. The New Testament describes this inward work of God as a "sprinkling with Christ's blood" by the "pouring out of the Holy Spirit" (1 Pet. 1:2, Titus 3:6, Acts 2:17). Baptism is applied to believing adults in reflection upon that past work which God has already done in their lives. Baptism is applied to believer's infants in anticipation of that same work of God taking place in their lives one day, when they trust in Christ. Seeing infant baptism as a sign of purification from sin and union with Christ does not mean that the child is in any way saved through the baptism, nor does it guarantee that the child will become a Christian.

Rom. 6:3-4. **Do you not know that all of us who have been baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death?** 4 **We were buried therefore with him by baptism into death, in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, we too might walk in newness of life.**

1 Pet. 1:2. **according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, in the sanctification of the Spirit, for obedience to Jesus Christ and for sprinkling with his blood:** May grace and peace be multiplied to you.

Titus 3:6. **whom he poured out on us richly through Jesus Christ our Savior,**

Acts 2:17. **'And in the last days it shall be, God declares, that I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh, and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams;**

**A SIGN OF DEDICATION**

Being baptized also **signifies being set apart from the world** and being consecrated to God and His ways. This is why adult baptisms are always accompanied by the taking of membership vows and infant baptisms by parental vows to raise children in the "training and instruction of the Lord" (Eph. 6:4. **Fathers, do not provoke your children to anger, but bring them up in the discipline and instruction of the Lord.**). Through infant baptism the child is formally set apart into the church body in order to be exposed to the Word of God and the people of God as the means through which the child may one day be brought to saving faith in Christ.

**DOES BAPTISM SAVE CHILDREN?**

"Will baptism save this child? No, salvation comes through trusting in Jesus Christ as one’s Savior and Lord. Then why do we baptize this child? Not for sentiment, though he/she is sweet. Not for tradition, though it is dear. We baptize this child because we believe the Bible commands us to do so.

Throughout biblical history, God promised to bless through a covenant relationship with his people. He said to Abraham, "I will be a God to you and to your children after you.” Abraham believed God’s covenant promise and devoted all that he had to the Lord, including the members of his household. In obedience to God, Abraham showed his devotion through practicing the rite of circumcision in his household. This rite demonstrated that God’s covenant would pass to future generations, but would necessitate the shedding of blood for sin.

The shed blood did not create the covenant, but rather acted as a seal, a pledge given by God, that he would honor his promise to all who, like “Abraham put their faith in him.

In the New Testament the apostle Peter, preaching on the day of Pentecost, assured all that the covenant promises of God would continue for the children of believers. He said in Acts 2:38-39, “Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins…The promise is for you and your children and for all who are far off for all whom the Lord our God will call.”
The promise to bless through faith in God’s grace continued, but the apostle Paul told the Colossian believers that the sign of this covenant had changed. No longer foreshadowing the shedding of Christ’s blood, the New Testament sacrament of baptism is a sign of what Christ’s blood accomplishes: the washing away of sin, and thus our union with him.

This water does not itself wash away sin, but rather, according to the apostle Paul, this sacrament acts as a seal - a visible pledge of God given to the church - whereby heaven assures us that when such children as this one express faith in Christ, all the promises of his covenant of grace will apply to them.

In the New Testament accounts of baptism, every person identified as having a household present at his or her conversion also had the whole household baptized.

“In the baptism of our children, we remember God’s goodness to believers and their families. We baptize children in obedience to biblical teaching, in keeping with the precedent of centuries of faithful families, and in expectation of God’s presence and blessing. God now uses this sacrament to pledge to us his faithfulness as we, in faith, devote this child of the covenant to him.” - Bryan Chapell

Have You Been Baptized?  Circle  YES  NO

If you have not been baptized yet, you should schedule an appointment with the leaders of your church and inform them of your desire to be baptized. Remember, you must understand that Baptism DOES NOT save you. Only the blood of Jesus can save you. Someone has said, "You can be baptized in the Jordan River until the fish know you by first name--but that won’t save you." Baptism is simply a symbol of your salvation through Jesus, and is something Christians do out of obedience to the commands of Christ. Baptism is NOT something you do just because your friends are getting baptized. Baptism DOES NOT make you pure and holy. Only the Holy Spirit can do that.

The Lord’s Supper

Another area in which we should obey God is in the taking of the Lord’s Supper. The Bible tells us that Christians should regularly take the Lord’s Supper, which Jesus demonstrated with His disciples just before His arrest and crucifixion (read Matthew 26, Mark 14, and Luke 22 which are found at the end of this lesson). It is important to understand that just as baptism does not give us salvation, likewise the Lord’s Supper does not cause us to be converted. What is the meaning of the Lord’s Supper?

1) It is a reminder for us that Jesus gave His body and blood for us (Luke 22:19, “And he took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke it and gave it to them, saying, “This is my body, which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of me.”)

2) It tells the world of Christ's death (1 Corinthians 11:26, “For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes.”)

3) It shows our unity with our Christians (1 Corinthians 10:16-17 16 The cup of blessing that we bless, is it not a participation in the blood of Christ? The bread that we break, is it not a participation in the body of Christ? 17 Because there is one bread, we who are many are one body, for we all partake of the one bread.)

The Bible tells us that the Lord’s Supper is a very special and sacred ceremony. It is not to be taken lightly or with the wrong attitude. In fact, the Bible gives us a specific warning about taking the Lord’s Supper in a way that is inappropriate.

Read 1 Corinthians 11:27-32. 27 Whoever, therefore, eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty concerning the body and blood of the Lord. 28 Let a person examine himself, then, and so eat of the bread and drink of the cup. 29 For anyone who eats and drinks without discerning the body eats and drinks judgment on himself. 30 That is why many of you are weak and ill, and some have died. 31 But if we judged ourselves truly, we would not be judged. 32 But when we are judged by the Lord, we are disciplined so that we may not be condemned along with the world. What is the warning that the apostle Paul gives? ________________
What does it mean to “examine yourself” (vs. 28)? Firstly, it means that you must be sure that you are a Christian - that you have put your faith in Jesus alone and have received Him into your life (the Bible warns that unbelievers who participate in the Lord’s Supper will be punished). Secondly, you must recognize that the Lord’s Supper is truly symbolizing the death of Jesus. It is not simply juice (or wine) and bread, but it is a holy symbol of the precious body and blood of Jesus. Thirdly, you should be sure that you have no unconfessed sin in your life, so that you can come to the Lord’s Table with pure hands and hearts.

How Should I Prepare To Take The Lord's Supper?
On the day before the Lord’s Supper is given at your church (or in the morning before church), it is wise to spend some time reading the Bible and meditating on what Jesus has done for you. You might want to read something from the Psalms, or read Isaiah 53 which prophesies the death of Jesus. Spend some time confessing any sins in your life, and then worship and thank Jesus as you remember that He gave His body and blood to take the punishment for your sins so that you could have a relationship with God and receive eternal life.

Do you now make a practice of preparing yourself before taking the Lord's Supper? What do you do?

If you haven't been in the habit of preparing yourself to take the Lord's Supper, what is your plan now?

How Many Times Should A Christian Take The Lord's Supper?
The Bible does not give us clear instruction as to how often we should take the Lord’s Supper. Jesus simply said to take it “often” (see 1 Cor. 11:26, “For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the Lord’s death until he comes.”) The early church took the Lord’s Supper daily (see Acts 2:46, “And day by day, attending the temple together and breaking bread in their homes, they received their food with glad and generous hearts”) and other times they took it weekly (see Acts 20:7, “On the first day of the week, when we were gathered together to break bread, Paul talked with them, intending to depart on the next day, and he prolonged his speech until midnight.”). Many churches today take the Lord’s Supper once a month, and others take it weekly.

The Most Important Thing
Before we end this chapter on obedience, we must look at the most important aspect of obedience -- in fact, the most important aspect of the Christian life. When Jesus was asked what the most important commandment in the Bible was, His reply was very clear.

Read Matthew 22:36-40, 36 “Teacher, which is the great commandment in the Law?” 37 And he said to him, “You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind. 38 This is the great and first commandment. 39 And a second is like it: You shall love your neighbor as yourself. 40 On these two commandments depend all the Law and the Prophets.” Now write Jesus’ answer to this question:

Read 1 Corinthians 13, 1If I speak in the tongues of men and of angels, but have not love, I am a noisy gong or a clanging cymbal. 2 And if I have prophetic powers, and understand all mysteries and all knowledge, and if I have all faith, so as to remove mountains, but have not love, I am nothing. 3 If I give away all I have, and if I deliver up my body to be burned, but have not love, I gain nothing. 4 Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude. Love does not insist on its own way; it is not irritable or resentful; love does not rejoice at wrongdoing, but rejoices with the truth. 7 Love bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, endures all things. 8 Love never ends. As for prophesies, they will pass away; as for tongues, they will cease; as for knowledge, it will pass away. 9 For we know in part and we prophesy in part, but when the perfect comes, the partial will pass away. 11 When I was a child, I spoke like a child, I thought like a child, I reasoned like a child. When I became a man, I gave up childish ways. 12 For now we see in a
mirror dimly, but then face to face. Now I know in part; then I shall know fully, even as I have been fully known.\textsuperscript{11} So now faith, hope, and love abide, these three; but the greatest of these is love.

Now read it again, slowly and thoughtfully, considering the meaning of the words. What does this chapter say is the most important part of the Christian life? __________________________________________

What are some things that love is? (verses 4-7) __________________________________________

________________________

________________________

Note: In the Greek, these verses give us fourteen uses of the word love as an action NOT as a feeling. According to verses 2, if you do not have love, what does this passage say you are? _____________________________

________________________________________

________________________________________

Love is absolutely essential in the Christian life. 1 Corinthians 13 tells us that if we are perfectly obedient in all of our actions but do not love, we are nothing more than a “clanging cymbal.” In fact, as you just read, the Bible tells us that without love we are NOTHING! Obedience without a loving character is worthless and meaningless.

Do you have a loving character? Do others sense the love of God in your life? Do people know that they will always receive words and deeds of kindness and love from you? Remember: Obedience without love is NOTHING.

Look again at what love is according to 1 Corinthians 13.
1) Are you showing love?
2) Are you patient, or do you get angry at others quickly?
3) Are you kind? Remember: for every criticism, give ten compliments?
4) Are you not jealous or envious?
5) Are you not proud or boastful?
6) Do you correct people in a rude manner when they are wrong?
7) Do you look out for the needs of others before your own needs (Philippians 2:3, “Do nothing from selfish ambition or conceit, but in humility count others more significant than yourselves.”)
8) Are you quick to forgive and let it go when someone wrongs you. Read Matthew 5:23-24, \textsuperscript{23} So if you are offering your gift at the altar and there remember that your brother has something against you, \textsuperscript{24} leave your gift there before the altar and go. First be reconciled to your brother, and then come and offer your gift. Do you keep in the back of your head a list which says "Rotten things this person has done to me?"
9) Do you rejoice in goodness and truth? Are there books and pictures that should not be in your home? Remember: Obedience without love is NOTHING.
10) Do you always protect, trust, hope and persevere?

If you struggle with being loving toward others, take a moment now to pray that God will help you to be loving. Ask Him to develop within you the qualities of love that are spoken of in 1 Corinthians 13. This is the most important aspect of living the obedient Christian life -- that in all that we do, we show love to God and others.

God is the only one who can change you into the kind of person you should be. As Zechariah 4:6 says, “Not by power, nor by might, but by my Spirit.” No matter how hard we try, God is the only One who can develop within you the loving character you need. Remember, “The One who called you is faithful, and He will do it.” (1 Thessalonians 5:24).

**Key Closing Character Questions**

1) What words would your spouse or best friend use to describe your character (or lack thereof)? What steps are you taking to change your character for the better?
2) If we are forgiven our sins in Christ and eternally sealed to redemption by the Holy Spirit, what difference does it make if we sin or don't sin? If we obey or don't obey? The Bible says if we confess, God will forgive. So why not just do whatever we want? All we need to do is confess afterwards. Why should we focus on obedience? _________________________________________________________________

Read 1 John 2:3-6,  And by this we know that we have come to know him, if we keep his commandments.  Whoever says “I know him” but does not keep his commandments is a liar, and the truth is not in him,  but whoever keeps his word, in him truly the love of God is perfected. By this we may know that we are in him:  whoever says he abides in him ought to walk in the same way in which he walked. This scripture says that obedience is evidence (fruit) of our relationship with Christ. It also says that disobedience is indication that the "truth is not in him". Can a Christian then be disobedient? For if you are a true believer in Christ, and have become a new creation in him, can you then be disobedient? Or if you are disobedient, does that indicate that you are not a true believer? _________________________________________________________________

Matthew Chapter 26

26 When Jesus had finished all these sayings, he said to his disciples,  “You know that after two days the Passover is coming, and the Son of Man will be delivered up to be crucified.” Then the chief priests and the elders of the people gathered in the palace of the high priest, whose name was Caiaphas, and plotted together in order to arrest Jesus by stealth and kill him.  But they said, “Not during the feast, lest there be an uproar among the people.”  Now when Jesus was at Bethany in the house of Simon the leper,  a woman came up to him with an alabaster flask of very expensive ointment, and she poured it on his head as he reclined at table.  And when the disciples saw it, they were indignant, saying, “Why this waste?”  For this could have been sold for a large sum and given to the poor.”  But Jesus, aware of this, said to them, “Why do you trouble the woman? For she has done a beautiful thing to me.  For you always have the poor with you, but you will not always have me.  In pouring this ointment on my body, she has done it to prepare me for burial.  Truly, I say to you, wherever this gospel is proclaimed in the whole world, what she has done will also be told in memory of her.”  Then one of the twelve, whose name was Judas Iscariot, went to the chief priests and said, “What will you give me if I deliver him over to you?” And they paid him thirty pieces of silver.  And from that moment he sought an opportunity to betray him.  Now on the first day of Unleavened Bread the disciples came to Jesus, saying, “Where will you have us prepare for you to eat the Passover?”  He said, “Go into the city to a certain man and say to him, ‘The Teacher says, My time is at hand. I will eat the Passover at your house with my disciples.’”  And the disciples did as Jesus had directed them, and they prepared the Passover.  When it was evening, he reclined at table with the twelve.  And as they were eating, he said, “Truly, I say to you, one of you will betray me.”  And they were very sorrowful and began to say to him one after another, “Is it I, Lord?”  He answered, “He who has dipped his hand in the dish with me will betray me.  The Son of Man goes as it is written of him, but woe to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would have been better for that man if he had not been born.”  Judas, who would betray him, answered, “Is it I, Rabbi?”  He said to him, “You have said so.”  Now as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and after blessing it broke it and gave it to the disciples, and said, “Take, eat; this is my body.”  And the disciples did as Jesus had directed them, and they prepared the Passover.  When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.  Then Jesus said to them, “You will all fall away because of me this night. For it is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd, and the sheep of the flock will be scattered.’”  But after I am raised up, I will go before you to Galilee.”  Peter answered him, “Though they all fall away because of you, I will never fall away.”  Jesus said to him, “Truly, I tell you, this very night, before the rooster crows, you will deny me three times.”  Peter said to him, “Even if I must die with you, I will not deny you!” And all the disciples said the same.  Then Jesus went with them to a place called Gethsemane, and he said to his disciples, “Sit here, while I go over there and pray.”  And taking with him Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, he began to be sorrowful and troubled.  Then he said to them, “My soul is very sorrowful, even to death; remain here, and watch with me.”  And going a little farther he fell on his face and prayed, saying, “My Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me; nevertheless, not as I will, but as you will.”  And he came to the disciples and found them sleeping. And he said to Peter, “So, could you not watch with me one hour?  Watch and pray that you may not enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.”  Again, for the second time, he went away and prayed, “My Father, if this cannot
pass unless I drink it, your will be done.” 43 And again he came and found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy. 44 So, leaving them again, he went away and prayed for the third time, saying the same words again. 45 Then he came to the disciples and said to them, “Sleep and take your rest later on. See, the hour is at hand, and the Son of Man is betrayed into the hands of sinners. 46 Rise, let us be going; see, my betrayer is at hand.” 47 While he was still speaking, Judas came, one of the twelve, and with him a great crowd with swords and clubs, from the chief priests and the elders of the people. 48 Now the betrayer had given them a sign, saying, “The one I will kiss is the man; seize him.” 49 And he came up to Jesus at once and said, “Greetings, Rabbi!” And he kissed him. 50 Jesus said to him, “Friend, do what you came to do.” Then they came up and laid hands on Jesus and seized him. 51 And behold, one of those who were with Jesus stretched out his hand and drew his sword and struck the servant of the high priest and cut off his ear. 52 Then Jesus said to him, “Put your sword back into its place. For all who take the sword perish by the sword. 53 Do you think that I cannot appeal to my Father, and he will at once send me more than twelve legions of angels? 54 But how then should the Scriptures be fulfilled, that it must be so?” 55 At that hour Jesus said to the crowds, “Have you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs to capture me? Day after day I sat in the temple teaching, and you did not seize me. 56 But all this has taken place that the Scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled.” Then all the disciples left him and fled. 57 Then those who had seized Jesus led him to Caiaphas the high priest, where the scribes and the elders had gathered. 58 And Peter was following him at a distance, as far as the courtyard of the high priest, and going inside he sat with the guards to see the end. 59 Now the chief priests and the whole council were seeking false testimony against Jesus that they might put him to death, 60 but they found none, though many false witnesses came forward. At last two came forward 61 and said, “This man said, ‘I am able to destroy the temple of God, and to rebuild it in three days.’” 62 And the high priest stood up and said, “Have you no answer to make? What is it that these men testify against you?” 63 But Jesus remained silent. And the high priest said to him, “I adjure you by the living God, tell us if you are the Christ, the Son of God.” 64 Jesus said to him, “You have said so. But I tell you, from now on you will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of Power and coming on the clouds of heaven.” 65 Then the high priest tore his robes and said, “He has uttered blasphemy. What further witnesses do we need? You have now heard his blasphemy. 66 What is your judgment?” They answered, “He deserves death.” 67 Then they spit in his face and struck him. And some slapped him, 68 saying, “Prophesy to us, you Christ! Who is it that struck you?” 69 Now Peter was sitting outside in the courtyard. And a servant girl came up to him and said, “You also were with Jesus the Galilean.” 70 But he denied it before them all, saying, “I do not know what you mean.” 71 And when he went out to the entrance, another servant girl saw him, and she said to the bystanders, “This man was with Jesus of Nazareth.” 72 And again he denied it with an oath: “I do not know the man.” 73 After a little while the bystanders came up and said to Peter, “Certainly you too are one of them, for your accent betrays you.” 74 Then he began to invoke a curse on himself and to swear, “I do not know the man.” And immediately the rooster crowed. 75 And Peter remembered the saying of Jesus, “Before the rooster crows, you will deny me three times.” And he went out and wept bitterly.

Mark Chapter 14

14 It was now two days before the Passover and the Feast of Unleavened Bread. And the chief priests and the scribes were seeking how to arrest him by stealth and kill him, 2 for they said, “Not during the feast, lest there be an uproar from the people.” 3 And while he was at Bethany in the house of Simon the leper, as he was reclining at table, a woman came with an alabaster flask of ointment of pure nard, very costly, and she broke the flask and poured it over his head. 4 There were some who said to themselves indignantly, “Why was the ointment wasted like that? 5 For this ointment could have been sold for more than three hundred denarii and given to the poor.” And they scolded her. 6 But Jesus said, “Leave her alone. Why do you trouble her? She has done a beautiful thing to me. 7 For you always have the poor with you, and whenever you want, you can do good for them. But you will not always have me. 8 She has done what she could; she has anointed my body beforehand for burial. 9 And truly, I say to you, wherever the gospel is proclaimed in the whole world, what she has done will be told in memory of her.” 10 Then Judas Iscariot, who was one of the twelve, went to the chief priests in order to betray him to them. 11 And when they heard it, they were glad and promised to give him money. And he sought an opportunity to betray him. 12 And on the first day of Unleavened Bread, when they sacrificed the Passover lamb, his disciples said to him, “Where will you have us go and prepare for you to eat the Passover?” 13 And he sent two of his disciples and said to them, “Go into the city, and a man carrying a jar of water will meet you. Follow him, 14 and wherever he enters, say to the master of the house, ‘The Teacher says, Where is my guest room, where I may eat the Passover with my disciples?’ 15 And he will show you a large upper room furnished and ready; there prepare for us.” 16 And the disciples set out and went to the city and found it just as he had told them, and they prepared the Passover. 17 And when it was evening, he came with the twelve. 18 And as they were reclining at table and eating, Jesus said, “Truly, I say to you, one of you will betray me, one who is eating with me.” 19 They began to be sorrowful and to say to him one after another, “Is it I?” 20 He said to them, “It is one of the twelve, one who is dipping bread into the dish with me. 21 For the Son of Man goes as it is written of him, but woe to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would have been better for that man if he had not been born.” 22 And as they
were eating, he took bread, and after blessing it broke it and gave it to them, and said, “Take; this is my body.” 23 And he took a cup, and when he had given thanks he gave it to them, and they all drank of it. 24 And he said to them, “This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many. 25 Truly, I say to you, I will not drink again of the fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new in the kingdom of God.” 26 And when they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives. 27 And Jesus said to them, “You will all fall away, for it is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered.’ 28 But after I am raised up, I will go before you to Galilee.” 29 Peter said to him, “Even though all fall away, I will not.” 30 And Jesus said to him, “Truly, truly, I say to you, this very night, before the rooster crows twice, you will deny me three times.” 31 But he said emphatically, “If I must die with you, I will not deny you.” And they all said the same. 32 And they went to a place called Gethsemane. And he said to his disciples, “Sit here while I pray.” 33 And he took with him Peter and James and John, and began to be greatly distressed and troubled. 34 And he said to them, “My soul is very sorrowful, even to death. Remain here and watch.” 35 And going a little farther, he fell on the ground and prayed that, if it were possible, the hour might pass from him. 36 And he said, “Abba, Father, all things are possible for you. Remove this cup from me. Yet not what I will, but what you will.” 37 And he came and found them sleeping, and he said to Peter, “Simon, are you asleep? Could you not watch one hour? 38 Watch and pray that you may not enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak.” 39 And again he went away and prayed, saying the same words. 40 And again he came and found them sleeping, for their eyes were very heavy, and they did not know what to answer him. 41 And he came the third time and said to them, “Are you still sleeping and taking your rest? It is enough now; the hour has come. The Son of Man is betrayed into the hands of sinners. 42 Rise, let us be going; see, my betrayer is at hand.” 43 And immediately, while he was still speaking, Judas came, one of the twelve, and with him a crowd with swords and clubs, from the chief priests and the scribes and the elders. 44 Now the betrayer had given them a sign, saying, “The one I will kiss is the man. Seize him and lead him away under guard.” 45 And when he came, he went up to him at once and said, “Rabbi!” And he kissed him. 46 And they laid hands on him and seized him. 47 But one of those who stood by drew his sword and struck the servant of the high priest and cut off his ear. 48 And Jesus said to them, “Have you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs to capture me? 49 Day after day I was with you in the temple teaching, and you did not seize me. But let the Scriptures be fulfilled.” 50 And they all left him and fled. 51 And a young man followed him, with nothing but a linen cloth about his body. And the 52 But he left the linen cloth and ran away naked. 53 And they led Jesus to the high priest. And all the chief priests and the elders and the scribes came together. 54 And Peter had followed him at a distance, right into the courtyard of the high priest. And he was sitting with the guards and warming himself at the fire. 55 Now the chief priests and the whole council were seeking testimony against Jesus to put him to death, but they found none. 56 For many bore false witness against him, but their testimony did not agree. 57 And some stood up and bore false witness against him, saying, 58 “We heard him say, ‘I will destroy this temple that is made with hands, and in three days I will build another, not made with hands.’” 59 Yet even about this their testimony did not agree. 60 And the high priest stood up in the midst and asked Jesus, “Have you no answer to make? What is it that these men testify against you?” 61 But he remained silent and made no answer. Again the high priest asked him, “Are you the Christ, the Son of the Blessed?” 62 And Jesus said, “I am, and you will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of Power, and coming with the clouds of heaven.” 63 And the high priest tore his garments and said, “What further witnesses do we need? 64 You have heard his blasphemy. What is your decision?” 65 And they all condemned him as deserving death. 66 And some began to spit on him and to cover his face and to strike him, saying to him, “Prophesy!” And the guards received him with blows. 67 And as Peter was below in the courtyard, one of the servant girls of the high priest came, 68 and seeing Peter warming himself, she looked at him and said, “You also were with the Nazarene, Jesus.” 69 But he denied it, saying, “I neither know nor understand what you mean.” And he went out into the gateway and the rooster crowed. 70 And the servant girl saw him and began again to say to the bystanders, “This man is one of them.” 71 But again he denied it. And after a little while the bystanders again said to Peter, “Certainly you are one of them, for you are a Galilean.” 72 But he began to invoke a curse on himself and to swear, “I do not know this man of whom you speak.” 73 And immediately the rooster crowed a second time. And Peter remembered how Jesus had said to him, “Before the rooster crowes twice, you will deny me three times.” And he broke down and wept.

Luke Chapter 22

22 Now the Feast of Unleavened Bread drew near, which is called the Passover. 2 And the chief priests and the scribes were seeking how to put him to death, for they feared the people. 3 Then Satan entered into Judas called Iscariot, who was of the number of the twelve. 4 He went away and conferred with the chief priests and officers how he might betray him to them. 5 And they were glad, and agreed to give him money. 6 So he consented and sought an opportunity to betray him to them in the absence of a crowd. 7 Then came the day of Unleavened Bread, on which the Passover lamb had to be sacrificed. 8 So Jesus sent Peter and John, saying, “Go and prepare the Passover for us, that we may eat it.” 9 They said to him, “Where will you have us prepare it?” 10 He said to them, “Behold, when you have entered the city, a man carrying a jar of water will meet you. Follow him into the house that he enters and tell the master of the house, ‘The Teacher says to you, Where is the
believe, him away to their council, and they said, “Prophesy! Who is it that struck you?” The men who were holding Jesus in custody were mocking him as they beat him. Said to him, “Before the rooster crows today, you will deny me three times that you know me.” Simon, Simon, behold, Satan demanded to have you, that he might sift you like wheat, but Jesus said to him, “Simon, Simon, behold, Satan has come like a roaring lion to sweep you away. But do not fear, Simon, for I have given you the keys of the kingdom of heaven. Whatever you bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.” Peter said to him, “Lord, why not? I am ready to go with you both to prison and to death.” And he said to them, “If you are the Christ, tell us. But Peter said, “Woman, I am not.” And one of them struck the servant of the high priest and cut off his right ear. But Jesus said, “Have you come out with a sword, with clubs and withknapsacks? I was with you in my trials, and you did not help me. But when I was with you after day in the temple, you did not lay hands on me. But this is your hour, and the power of darkness. Then they seized him and led him away, bringing him into the high priest’s house, and Peter was following at a distance. And when they had kindled a fire in the midst of the courtyard and sat down together, Peter sat down among them. But after an interval of about an hour still another insisted, saying, “You also are one of them.” But Peter said, “Man, I am not.” And the Lord turned and looked at Peter. And Peter remembered the saying of the Lord, how he had said to him, “Before the rooster crows today, you will deny me three times.” And he went out and wept bitterly. When day came, the assembly of the elders of the people gathered together, both chief priests and scribes. And they led him away to their council, and they said, “If you are the Christ, tell us.” But he said to them, “If I tell you, you will not believe, and if I ask you, you will not answer. But from now on the Son of Man shall be seated at the right hand of the power of God.” So they all said, “Are you the Son of God, then?” And he said to them, “You say that I am.” Then they said, “What further testimony do we need? We have heard it ourselves from his own lips.”
Assignment for Chapter 12

What Do I Need To Know About The Great Commission?

NOTE: Complete and check all of the following assignments before going to chapter 13.

1. Study and complete the material for chapter 12.
2. Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 12 with the person who is discipling you.
3. Memorize Acts 1:8, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.
4. Discuss your progress on goals set in the previous lessons such as prayer life, obedience, temptation, loving others, etc.
5. Review memory verses from previous weeks and review the names of all the books of the New Testament and Old Testament.

- John 3:16-17. “For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the world might be saved through him.
- 1 John 5:12-13. Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life.
- I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God that you may know that you have eternal life.
- Exodus 15:11. “Who is like you, O LORD, among the gods? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, awesome in glorious deeds, doing wonders
- Psalm 119:9-11. How can a young man keep his way pure? By guarding it according to your word. With my whole heart I seek you; let me not wander from your commandments!
- I have stored up your word in my heart, that I might not sin against you.
- 1 John 5:14. And this is the confidence that we have toward him, that if we ask anything according to his will he hears us.
- Mathew 28:18-20. And Jesus came and said to them, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.”
- Colossians 3:12-14. Put on then, as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved, compassionate hearts, kindness, humility, meekness, and patience, bearing with one another and, if one has a complaint against another, forgiving each other; as the Lord has forgiven you, so you also must forgive.
- And above all these put on love, which binds everything together in perfect harmony.
- Galatians 5:22-23. But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law.
- Luke 10:19. Behold, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall hurt you.
- 1 John 4:4. Little children, you are from God and have overcome them, for he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.
- Malachi 3:10. Bring the full tithe into the storehouse, that there may be food in my house. And thereby put me to the test, says the Lord of hosts, if I will not open the windows of heaven for you and pour down for you a blessing until there is no more need.
- Ephesians 5:8-10. For at one time you were darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light (for the fruit of light is found in all that is good and right and true), and try to discern what is pleasing to the Lord.
- Acts 1:8 But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth.
Part Four: Reproducing Disciples
Chapter 12

What do I Need to Know about The Great Commission?

Memorize Acts 1:8

Acts 1:8.  But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth.

What Is The Great Commission?
The last words that Jesus said before He left earth and ascended into heaven are found in Matthew 28:18-20, and are known as “The Great Commission.” Jesus was speaking to His disciples as He said these words, giving them His final instructions. These instructions were not only meant for the men who were with Him on that day -- they were also meant for every person who is a follower of Jesus Christ. As followers of Jesus, it is important that we know and understand these instructions, and that we obey them. Look up Matthew 28:18-20 and write it below:

Matthew 28:18-20 (And Jesus came and said to them, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19 Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.”)

These final instructions from Jesus show us that God loves all the nations of the world, and that He wants people from every nation to be told of His love for them.

God’s Love for the Nations is Woven throughout the Entire Bible
The idea of telling all nations about the true God is not only found in the New Testament. Rather, God’s desire for all nations to know Him is seen in every book of the Bible, from Genesis through Revelation. Over and over we see that God wants everyone throughout the earth to know about Him. When we look closely at many of the familiar Old Testament stories, we see that God used the events that occurred to make His name known. Look up the following passages and answer the questions:

God’s Covenant with Abraham, Genesis 12:1-3 and Genesis 22:15-18 (also Acts 3:25)

Genesis 12:1-3 Now the LORD said to Abram, “Go from your country and your kindred and your father's house to the land that I will show you. 2 And I will make of you a great nation, and I will bless you and make your name great, so that you will be a blessing. 3 I will bless those who bless you, and him who dishonors you I will curse, and in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed.”

Genesis 22:15-18 And the angel of the LORD called to Abraham a second time from heaven 16 and said, “By myself I have sworn, declares the LORD, because you have done this and have not withheld your son, your only son, 17 I will surely bless you, and I will surely multiply your offspring as the stars of heaven and as the sand that is on the seashore. And your offspring shall possess the gate of his enemies, 18 and in your offspring shall all the nations of the earth be blessed, because you have obeyed my voice.”

Acts 3:25 You are the sons of the prophets and of the covenant that God made with your fathers, saying to Abraham, ‘And in your offspring shall all the families of the earth be blessed.’

113
In these passages God is telling Abraham not only that he will have a son, but that through Abraham’s seed, great blessings would come in the future (remember that Jesus came through the seed of Abraham). Who did God say would be blessed through Abraham? (see 12:3 and 22:18)

God opens the Jordan River, Joshua 3:14-17
Joshua 3:14-17 So when the people set out from their tents to pass over the Jordan with the priests bearing the ark of the covenant before the people, 15 and as soon as those bearing the ark had come as far as the Jordan, and the feet of the priests bearing the ark were dipped in the brink of the water (now the Jordan overflows all its banks throughout the time of harvest), 16 the waters coming down from above stood and rose up in a heap very far away, at Adam, the city that is beside Zarethan, and those flowing down toward the Sea of the Arabah, the Salt Sea, were completely cut off. And the people passed over opposite Jericho. 17 Now the priests bearing the ark of the covenant of the LORD stood firmly on dry ground in the midst of the Jordan, and all Israel was passing over on dry ground until all the nation finished passing over the Jordan.
Read Joshua 4: 23-24 For the LORD your God dried up the waters of the Jordan for you until you passed over, as the LORD your God did to the Red Sea, which he dried up for us until we passed over, 24 so that all the peoples of the earth may know that the hand of the LORD is mighty, that you may fear the LORD your God forever.” What did Joshua give as the reason God opened the Jordan River and the Red Sea?

David defeats Goliath, 1 Samuel 17:45-47
1 Samuel 17:45-47. Then David said to the Philistine, “You come to me with a sword and with a spear and with a javelin, but I come to you in the name of the LORD of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom you have defied. 46 This day the LORD will deliver you into my hand, and I will strike you down and cut off your head. And I will give the dead bodies of the host of the Philistines this day to the birds of the air and to the wild beasts of the earth, that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel, 47 and that all this assembly may know that the LORD saves not with sword and spear. For the battle is the LORD’s, and he will give you into our hand.”
In verse 46, what did David say was the reason that he was fighting Goliath?

Solomon dedicates the Temple, 1 Kings 8
Note: This chapter of Kings is located at the end of the lesson. What did Solomon pray that the "foreigner" (those who were not Israelites) and "all the people of the earth" would know? See verses 41-43 and verse 60.

Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego are delivered from Fire, Daniel 3
Note: This chapter of Daniel is located at the end of the lesson. When king Nebuchadnezzar saw that God protected these three faithful men, he wrote a decree (command) about the God they worshipped. To whom was this decree written? See verse 29.

Daniel is thrown to the Lions, Daniel 6
Note: This chapter of Daniel is located at the end of the lesson. After God delivered (saved) Daniel from the lions, King Darius made a decree. To whom was the decree written? What were they told to do? (vs. 25-27).
By looking at these events in the Old Testament (and many others not listed here), we can see that God wants His name to be known among all the nations of the earth. He continually put the nation of Israel into direct contact with many other nations, and then used various circumstances to allow these other nations to see that He alone is God.

God's desire is that all nations would worship Him. One book in the Bible that speaks a great deal about the nations worshipping God is Psalms. Read the following verses and write what they say about the nations:

Psalm 67:1-7. May God be gracious to us and bless us and make his face to shine upon us, Selah that your way may be known on earth, your saving power among all nations. Let the peoples praise you, O God; let all the peoples praise you! Let the nations be glad and sing for joy, for you judge the peoples with equity and guide the nations upon earth. Selah Let the peoples praise you, O God; let all the peoples praise you! The earth has yielded its increase; God, our God, shall bless us; God shall bless us; let all the ends of the earth fear him!

Psalm 72:8-11. May he have dominion from sea to sea, and from the River to the ends of the earth! May desert tribes bow down before him, and his enemies lick the dust! May the kings of Tarshish and of the coastlands render him tribute; may the kings of Sheba and Seba bring gifts! May all kings fall down before him, all nations serve him!

Psalm 86:9. “All the nations you have made shall come and worship before you, O Lord, and shall glorify your name.”

Psalm 96:1-3. Oh sing to the Lord a new song; sing to the Lord, all the earth! Sing to the Lord, bless his name; tell of his salvation from day to day. Declare his glory among the nations, his marvelous works among all the peoples!

Psalm 96: 9-10. Worship the Lord in the splendor of holiness; tremble before him, all the earth! Say among the nations, “The Lord reigns! Yes, the world is established; it shall never be moved; he will judge the peoples with equity.”

From studying these Old Testament passages (both the ones in Psalms and the ones you looked up earlier), what can you say about God's desire for all nations?
Understanding the Great Commission

Let us look again at The Great Commission in Matthew 28:18-20 (And Jesus came and said to them, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19 Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.”). In order to better understand Jesus’ command, it is helpful to examine His words in the original Greek. The Bible uses a special Greek word for “Go” in this passage. The word can mean “to cross over boundaries.” The Lord wants us to cross over ethnic boundaries, cultural boundaries and geographical boundaries as we tell others about Him.

If we examine the original Greek still further, we find that the main verb in verse 19 is actually not “Go” but rather “make disciples.” The Greek literally says, “As you go, make disciples of all nations.”

What are two things that should be done to “make disciples”? 
1) verse 19 says ____________________________________________
2) verse 20 says ____________________________________________

The way we make disciples is not simply to preach the gospel and then baptize those who believe. There is more to making disciples than that. In order to make disciples, Jesus says that we must preach the gospel, baptize new believers and teach new converts “to obey everything that I have commanded you.” We must make certain that we take the time to teach new converts to obey. New converts must grow in their understanding of the Word of God and how to apply it to their lives. This can only be accomplished by God’s power and presence, and by our willingness to be used as His tools.

What promise does Jesus make in verse 20? ______________________

What Is My Part In Fulfilling The Great Commission?

Christ has commissioned every Christian (including you) to “go and make disciples of all nations,” and He promises to be with us. But how is this to be accomplished? The answer to that question is found in Acts 1:8 (“But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth.”) Write that verse out: ________________

__________________________

According to this verse, from where will we get the power to be witnesses? _____________________________

Where were the disciples to go to tell others about Jesus? _____________________________

Jesus told His disciples that they would receive power from the Holy Spirit so that they could be His witnesses. He also told them where to witness: “in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.” The disciples were living in Jerusalem at that time, which was a major city in the area of Judea. To the north of Judea was an area called Samaria. Samaritans were despised by the Jews because Samaritans were “half-breeds” (one parent was a Jew and the other parent was a Gentile).

Jesus told His disciples to make disciples of all of these people. He did not want them to only make disciples of the people of their own race and in their own area -- they were also to go beyond their racial boundaries, cultural boundaries, geographic boundaries and social boundaries. Acts 1:8 can be diagrammed as follows:
Jesus was not telling each of us literally to go to Jerusalem and Judea and Samaria to be His witnesses. In order to understand what is meant for us, we need to look at the principle Jesus was teaching, and apply it to our lives.

Jesus did not want His disciples to only witness in their home town among people with whom they were very comfortable. He wanted them to witness to people they were less familiar with (Judea), people that were “unacceptable” in the eyes of the world (Samaria), and people whose customs were very strange to them (ends of the earth). He wanted them to be willing to travel short distances (Judea, Samaria) and long distances (ends of the earth) in order to tell people the good news of Jesus Christ. And He wants us to do the same thing.

**Your Jerusalem**
What is the village or town where you currently live? ____________________________________________
Who are the people that you are most comfortable with? __________________________________________

__________________________

**Your Judea**
Who are the people in your neighboring areas? ____________________________________________________________

Who are the people that you are less familiar with? __________________________________________________________

__________________________

**Your Samaria**
Who are the unreached (those who do not know Jesus) in your country? ______________________________

Who are the people that are viewed as "foreign" or "unacceptable"? ______________________________________

__________________________

**The Ends of the Earth**
Can you name some unreached people in other countries? ____________________________________________

__________________________

117
Who are the people that seem very different from yourself? ____________________________________________

---

**Obeying the Great Commission**

Approximately one fourth of the people living in the world today have never heard the gospel! The billions of people who are Muslims, Hindus or Chinese have only 2% of the world’s missionaries. There are still 10,000 people groups that do not have even one church. Of the 6,800 languages in the world, 2,529 (37%) of them do not have a Bible available to them in their own language. In addition, an estimated 80,000 people die every day without ever having heard the Gospel. *That means 55 people every minute die without having heard about the God who loves them and gave His life for them. That’s almost one person per second!*

Meditate on the following verses. Do you think God is saying something to you through these scripture verses.

Romans 10:14-15. 14 How then will they call on him in whom they have not believed? And how are they to believe in him of whom they have never heard? And how are they to hear without someone preaching? 15 And how are they to preach unless they are sent? As it is written, “How beautiful are the feet of those who preach the good news!”

Romans 15:20-21 20 and thus I make it my ambition to preach the gospel, not where Christ has already been named, lest I build on someone else's foundation, 21 but as it is written, “Those who have never been told of him will see, and those who have never heard will understand.”

Matthew 9:36-38. 36 When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were harassed and helpless, like sheep without a shepherd. 37 Then he said to his disciples, “The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few; 38 therefore pray earnestly to the Lord of the harvest to send out laborers into his harvest.”

Isaiah 6:8, “And I heard the voice of the Lord saying, “Whom shall I send, and who will go for us?” Then I said, “Here I am! Send me.””

Remember that the supreme task of the church is the evangelization of the world. Only as the church fulfills her missionary obligation does she justify her existence. Oswald J. Smith said it so well, "Jesus commands us to go and make disciples—you must go—or send a substitute. No one deserves to hear the gospel twice when there are people who have not heard it once.”

**What Should I Do?**

God wants us to tell the world about Him. We shouldn’t assume that God is not calling us to be a missionary.
- His Word makes it clear that He is calling us to be a missionary! We are to witness to our Jerusalem, Judea, Samaria, and to the ends of the earth. God wants each of us to be willing to go wherever He sends us, and to witness to whomever He desires.

It is important to remember that Satan does not want us to be witnesses for Jesus. He does not want light to come to the people who are sitting in darkness (Acts 26:18). Satan will try to convince you that God is not calling you to be a missionary. Satan will try to put up obstacles, to convince you that it is too hard or too uncomfortable or too dangerous. Satan will tell you that you are not really under obligation to tell the world -- he will tell you that the obligation is only for full-time missionaries in your church. Satan will do anything he can to keep the gospel from spreading throughout the world. If you think that God is not calling you to be a missionary, make certain that you are not listening to the lies of Satan instead of the voice of God. Tell God that you are willing to go where He sends you, and ask Him to show you clearly His will for your life.

Have you considered going on a short term (2-3 week) mission trip? YES NO
What obstacles do you see to going on a short term mission trip?

____________________________________________________________________________________
____________________________________________________________________________________
____________________________________________________________________________________

Is it possible that those "obstacles" are the "enemy's" plan to keep you from stepping forward in faith to make an impact for God's kingdom?

____________________________________________________________________________________
____________________________________________________________________________________
____________________________________________________________________________________

If we are to be truly obedient to God's call to share the gospel with all the people of the world, we must:

1) Humbly tell the lord that you understand your obligation to take the gospel to the world.
2) Sincerely tell God that you are willing to go wherever He might send you.
3) Trust God to give you the strength to overcome obstacles in your way.

If you have sincerely done the things listed above and you feel certain that the Lord is not leading you at this time to leave your home, you must become a person who supports others as they go. You should do this in several ways:

1) Pray for missionaries and traveling evangelists who have left their homes to witness to others (read Colossians 4:3 and Romans 15:30-33).

Colossians 4:3 At the same time, pray also for us, that God may open to us a door for the word, to declare the mystery of Christ, on account of which I am in prison

Romans 15:30-33 I appeal to you, brothers, by our Lord Jesus Christ and by the love of the Spirit, to strive together with me in your prayers to God on my behalf, that I may be delivered from the unbelievers in Judea, and that my service for Jerusalem may be acceptable to the saints, so that by God's will I may come to you with joy and be refreshed in your company. May the God of peace be with you all. Amen.

Name a missionary that you could possibly pray for: _______________________________________

2) Support missionaries financially (read 2 Corinthians 8:1-4)

2 Corinthians 8:1-4. We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given among the churches of Macedonia, for in a severe test of affliction, their abundance of joy and their extreme poverty have overflowed in a wealth of generosity on their part. For they gave according to their means, as I can testify, and beyond their means, of their own accord, begging us earnestly for the favor of taking part in the relief of the saints

How much might God be leading you to give to missions on a monthly basis? ______________shillings

3) When missionaries visit your church, look for ways to serve them (invite them to your home for dinner, help to transport them where they need to go, provide them some food or clothing to help them in their work, etc.) Read 3 John 7:8 (For they have gone out for the sake of the name, accepting nothing from the Gentiles.)

4) If your church is not sending out many missionaries, help the leadership to understand the duty the church has to take the gospel to the ends of the earth. Read the following verses. How is your church doing in sending and supporting missionaries?

Acts 1:8. But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth.”

Acts 13: 2-4. While they were worshiping the Lord and fasting, the Holy Spirit said, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them.” Then after fasting and praying they laid their
hands on them and sent them off. 4 So, being sent out by the Holy Spirit, they went down to Seleucia, and from there they sailed to Cyprus.

Romans 10:14-15. 14 How then will they call on him in whom they have not believed? And how are they to believe in him of whom they have never heard? And how are they to hear without someone preaching? 15 And how are they to preach unless they are sent? As it is written, “How beautiful are the feet of those who preach the good news!”

Romans 15: 20-21. 20 and thus I make it my ambition to preach the gospel, not where Christ has already been named, lest I build on someone else's foundation, 21 but as it is written, “Those who have never been told of him will see, and those who have never heard will understand.”

As we close this chapter, please think of these three key words regarding the Great Commission: Pray, Give, Go!

Pray - Consider setting aside some time once a week to pray for various missionaries (read Colossians 4:3) At the same time, pray also for us, that God may open to us a door for the word, to declare the mystery of Christ, on account of which I am in prison)

Give - Consider giving some financial resources (above and beyond your tithe) to help missionaries (read 2 Corinthians 8:1-4) We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given among the churches of Macedonia, for in a severe test of affliction, their abundance of joy and their extreme poverty have overflowed in a wealth of generosity on their part. For they gave according to their means, as I can testify, and beyond their means, of their own accord, begging us earnestly for the favor of taking part in the relief of the saints)

Go - Consider spending two to three weeks in your lifetime doing a short term mission trip.

1 Kings Chapter 8

8 Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel and all the heads of the tribes, the leaders of the fathers' houses of the people of Israel, before King Solomon in Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the covenant of the LORD out of the city of David, which is Zion. 9 And all the men of Israel assembled to King Solomon at the feast in the month Ethanim, which is the seventh month. 10 And all the elders of Israel came, and the priests took up the ark. 11 And they brought up the ark of the LORD, the tent of meeting, and all the holy vessels that were in the tent; the priests and the Levites brought them up.

5 And King Solomon and all the congregation of Israel, who had assembled before him, were with him before the ark, sacrificing so many sheep and oxen that they could not be counted or numbered. 6 Then the priests brought the ark of the covenant of the LORD to its place in the inner sanctuary of the house, in the Most Holy Place, underneath the wings of the cherubim. 7 For the cherubim spread out their wings over the place of the ark, so that the cherubim overshadowed the ark and its poles. 8 And the poles were so long that the ends of the poles were seen from the Holy Place before the inner sanctuary; but they could not be seen from outside. And they are there to this day. 9 There was nothing in the ark except the two tablets of stone that Moses put there at Horeb, where the LORD made a covenant with the people of Israel, when they came out of the land of Egypt. 10 And when the priests came out of the Holy Place, a cloud filled the house of the LORD, so that the priests could not stand to minister because of the cloud, for the glory of the LORD filled the house of the LORD. 11 Then Solomon said, “The LORD has said that he would dwell in thick darkness. 12 I have indeed built you an exalted house, a place for you to dwell in forever.” 13 Then the king turned around and blessed all the assembly of Israel, while all the assembly of Israel stood. 14 And he said, “Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel, who with his hand has fulfilled what he promised with his mouth to David my father, saying, 15 ‘Since the day that I brought my people Israel out of Egypt, I chose no city out of all the tribes of Israel in which to build a house, that my name might be there. But I chose David to be over my people Israel.’ 16 Now it was in the heart of David my father to build a house for the name of the LORD, the God of Israel. 17 But the LORD said to David my father, ‘Whereas it was in your heart to build a house for my name, you did well that it was in your heart. 18 Nevertheless, you shall not build the house, but your son who shall be born
to you shall build the house for my name.’ 20 Now the LORD has fulfilled his promise that he made. For I have risen in the place of David my father, and sit on the throne of Israel, as the LORD promised, and I have built the house for the name of the LORD, the God of Israel. 21 And there I have provided a place for the ark, in which is the covenant of the LORD that he made with our fathers, when he brought them out of the land of Egypt.” 22 Then Solomon stood before the altar of the LORD in the presence of all the assembly of Israel and spread out his hands toward heaven, 23 and said, “O LORD, God of Israel, there is no God like you, in heaven above or on earth beneath, keeping covenant and showing steadfast love to your servants who walk before you with all their heart; 24 you have kept with your servant David my father what you declared to him. You spoke with your mouth, and with your hand have fulfilled it this day. 25 Now therefore, O LORD, God of Israel, keep for your servant David my father what you have promised him, saying, ‘You shall not lack a man to sit before me on the throne of Israel, if only your sons pay close attention to their way, to walk before me as you have walked before me.’ 26 Now therefore, O God of Israel, let your word be confirmed, which you have spoken to your servant David my father. 27 “But will God indeed dwell on the earth? Behold, heaven and the highest heaven cannot contain you; how much less this house that I have built! 28 Yet have regard to the prayer of your servant and to his plea, O LORD my God, listening to the cry and to the prayer that your servant prays before you this day, 29 that your eyes may be open night and day toward this house, the place of which you have said, ‘My name shall be there,’ that you may listen to the prayer that your servant offers toward this place. 30 And listen to the plea of your servant and of your people Israel, when they pray toward this place. And listen in heaven your dwelling place, and when you hear, forgive. 31 “If a man sins against his neighbor and is made to take an oath and comes and swears his oath before your altar in this house, 32 then hear in heaven and act and judge your servants, condemning the guilty by bringing his conduct on his own head, and vindicating the righteous by rewarding him according to his righteousness. 33 “When your people Israel are defeated before the enemy because they have sinned against you, and if they turn again to you and acknowledge your name and pray and plead with you in this house, 34 then hear in heaven and forgive the sin of your people Israel and bring them again to the land that you gave to their fathers. 35 “When heaven is shut up and there is no rain because they have sinned against you, if they pray toward this place and acknowledge your name and turn from their sin, when you afflict them, 36 then hear in heaven and forgive the sin of your servants, your people Israel, when you teach them the good way in which they should walk, and grant rain upon your land, which you have given to your people as an inheritance. 37 “If there is famine in the land, if there is pestilence or blight or mildew or locust or caterpillar, if their enemy besieges them in the land at their gates, whatever plague, whatever sickness there is, 38 whatever prayer, whatever plea is made by any man or by all your people Israel, each knowing the affliction of his own heart and stretching out his hands toward this house, 39 then hear in heaven your dwelling place and forgive and act and render to each whose heart you know, according to all his ways (for you, you only, know the hearts of all the children of mankind), 40 that they may fear you all the days that they live in the land that you gave to our fathers. 41 “Likewise, when a foreigner, who is not of your people Israel, comes from a far country for your name’s sake 42 (for they shall hear of your great name and your mighty hand, and of your outstretched arm), when he comes and prays toward this house, 43 hear in heaven your dwelling place and do according to all for which the foreigner calls to you, in order that all the peoples of the earth may know your name and fear you, as do your people Israel, and that they may know that this house that I have built is called by your name. 44 “If your people go out to battle against their enemy, by whatever way you shall send them, and they pray to the LORD toward the city that you have chosen and the house that I have built for your name, 45 then hear in heaven their prayer and their plea, and maintain their cause. 46 “If they sin against you—for there is no one who does not sin—and you are angry with them and give them to an enemy, so that they are carried away captive to the land of the enemy, far off or near, 47 yet if they turn their heart in the land to which they have been carried captive, and repent and plead with you in the land of their captors, saying, ‘We have sinned and have acted perversely and wickedly,’ 48 if they repent with all their mind and with all their heart in the land of their enemies, who carried them captive, and pray to you toward their land, which you gave to their fathers, the city that you have chosen, and the house that I have built for your name, 49 then hear in heaven your dwelling place their prayer and their plea, and maintain their cause 50 and forgive your people who have sinned against you, and all their transgressions that they have committed against you, and grant them compassion in the sight of those who carried them captive, that they may have compassion on them 51 (for they are your people, and your heritage, which you brought out of Egypt, from the midst of the iron furnace). 52 Let your eyes be open to the plea of your servant and to the plea of your people Israel, giving ear to them whenever they call to you. 53 For you separated them from among all the peoples of the earth to be your heritage, as you declared through Moses your servant, when you brought our fathers out of Egypt, O Lord GOD.” 54 Now as Solomon finished offering all this prayer and plea to the LORD, he arose from before the altar of the LORD, where he had knelt with hands outstretched toward heaven. 55 And he stood and blessed all the assembly of Israel with a loud voice, saying, 56 “Blessed be the LORD who has given rest to his people Israel, according to all that he promised. Not one word has failed of all his good promise, which he spoke by Moses his servant. 57 The LORD our God be with us, as he was with our fathers. May he not leave us or forsake us, 58 that he may incline our hearts to him, to walk in all his ways and to keep his commandments, his statutes, and his rules, which he commanded our fathers. 59

121
words of mine, with which I have pleaded before the LORD, be near to the LORD our God day and night, and may he maintain the cause of his servant and the cause of his people Israel, as each day requires, 61 that all the peoples of the earth may know that the LORD is God; there is no other. 62 Let your heart therefore be wholly true to the LORD our God, walking in his statutes and keeping his commandments, as at this day. 63 Then the king, and all Israel with him, offered sacrifice before the LORD. 64 Solomon offered as peace offerings to the LORD 22,000 oxen and 120,000 sheep. So the king and all the people of Israel dedicated the house of the LORD. 65 The same day the king consecrated the middle of the court that was before the house of the LORD, for there he offered the burnt offering and the grain offering and the fat pieces of the peace offerings, because the bronze altar that was before the LORD was too small to receive the burnt offering and the grain offering and the fat pieces of the peace offerings. 66 So Solomon held the feast at that time, and all Israel with him, a great assembly, from Lebo-hamath to the Brook of Egypt, before the LORD our God, seven days. 67 On the eighth day he sent the people away, and they blessed the king and went to their homes joyful and glad of heart for all the goodness that the LORD had shown to David his servant and to Israel his people.

Daniel Chapter 3

3 King Nebuchadnezzar made an image of gold, whose height was sixty cubits and its breadth six cubits. He set it up on the plain of Dura, in the province of Babylon. 4 Then King Nebuchadnezzar sent to gather the satraps, the prefects, and the governors, the counselors, the treasurers, the justices, the magistrates, and all the officials of the provinces to come to the dedication of the image that King Nebuchadnezzar had set up. 5 Then the satraps, the prefects, and the governors, the counselors, the treasurers, the justices, the magistrates, and all the officials of the provinces gathered for the dedication of the image that King Nebuchadnezzar had set up. And they stood before the image that Nebuchadnezzar had set up. 6 And whoever does not fall down and worship shall immediately be cast into a burning fiery furnace.” 7 Therefore, as soon as all the peoples heard the sound of the horn, pipe, lyre, trigon, harp, bagpipe, and every kind of music, you are to fall down and worship the golden image that King Nebuchadnezzar has set up. 8 And whoever does not fall down and worship shall be cast into a burning fiery furnace. 9 There are certain Jews whom you have appointed over the affairs of the province of Babylon: Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. These men, O king, pay no attention to you; they do not serve your gods or worship the golden image that you have set up.” 10 Then Nebuchadnezzar in furious rage commanded that Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego be brought. So they brought these men before the king. 11 Nebuchadnezzar answered and said to them, “Is it true, O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, that you do not serve my gods or worship the golden image that I have set up? 12 Now if you are ready when you hear the sound of the horn, pipe, lyre, trigon, harp, bagpipe, and every kind of music, shall fall down and worship the golden image. 13 And whoever does not fall down and worship shall be cast into a burning fiery furnace. And who is the god who will deliver you out of my hands?” 14 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego answered and said to the king, “O Nebuchadnezzar, we have no need to answer you in this matter. 15 If this be so, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver us out of your hand, O king. 16 But if not, be it known to you, O king, that we will not serve your gods or worship the golden image that you have set up.” 17 Then Nebuchadnezzar was filled with fury, and the expression of his face was changed against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. He ordered the furnace heated seven times more than it was usually heated. 18 And he ordered some of the mighty men of his army to bind Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, and to cast them into the burning fiery furnace. 19 Then these men were bound in their cloaks, their tunics, their hats, and their other garments, and they were thrown into the burning fiery furnace. 20 Because the king’s order was urgent and the furnace overheated, the flame of the fire killed those men who took up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. 21 And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, fell bound into the burning fiery furnace. 22 Then King Nebuchadnezzar was astonished and rose up in haste. He declared to his counselors, “Did we not cast three men bound into the fire?” They answered and said to the king, “True, O king.” 23 He answered and said, “But I see four men unbound, walking in the midst of the fire, and they are not hurt; and the appearance of the fourth is like a son of the gods.” 24 Then Nebuchadnezzar came near to the door of the burning fiery furnace; he declared, “Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, servants of the Most High God, come out, and come here!” Then Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego came out from the fire. 25 And the satraps, the prefects, the governors, and the king's counselors gathered together and saw that the fire had not had any power over the bodies of those men. The hair of their heads was not singed, their cloaks were not harmed, and no smell of fire had come upon them.

Nebuchadnezzar answered and said, “Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who has sent his angel
and delivered his servants, who trusted in him, and set aside the king's command, and yielded up their bodies rather than serve and worship any god except their own God. 20Therefore I make a decree: Any people, nation, or language that speaks anything against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego shall be torn limb from limb, and their houses laid in ruins, for there is no other god who is able to rescue in this way." 30Then the king promoted Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego in the province of Babylon.

Daniel Chapter 6

6 It pleased Darius to set over the kingdom 120 satraps, to be throughout the whole kingdom; 2 and over them three high officials, of whom Daniel was one, to whom these satraps should give account, so that the king might suffer no loss. 3 Then this Daniel became distinguished above all the other high officials and satraps, because an excellent spirit was in him. And the king planned to set him over the whole kingdom. 4 Then the high officials and the satraps sought to find a ground for complaint against Daniel with regard to the kingdom, but they could find no ground for complaint or any fault, because he was faithful, and no error or fault was found in him. 5 Then these men said, "We shall not find any ground for complaint against this Daniel unless we find it in connection with the law of his God." 6 Then these high officials and satraps came by agreement to the king and said to him, "O King Darius, live forever! 7 All the high officials of the kingdom, the prefects and the satraps, the counselors and the governors are agreed that the king should establish an ordinance and enforce an injunction, that whoever makes petition to any god or man for thirty days, except to you, O king, shall be cast into the den of lions. 8 Now, O king, establish the injunction and sign the document, so that it cannot be changed, according to the law of the Medes and the Persians, which cannot be revoked." 9 Therefore King Darius signed the document and injunction. 10 When Daniel knew that the document had been signed, he went to his house where he had windows in his upper chamber open toward Jerusalem. He got down on his knees three times a day and prayed and gave thanks before his God, as he had done previously. 11 Then these men came by agreement and found Daniel making petition and plea before his God. 12 Then they came near and said before the king, concerning the injunction, "O king! Did you not sign an injunction, that anyone who makes petition to any god or man for thirty days, except to you, O king, shall be cast into the den of lions?" The king answered and said, "The thing stands fast, according to the law of the Medes and the Persians, which cannot be revoked." 13 Then they answered and said before the king, "Daniel, who is one of the exiles from Judah, pays no attention to you, O king, or the injunction you have signed, but makes his petition three times a day." 14 Then the king, when he heard these words, was much distressed and set his mind to deliver Daniel. And he labored till the sun went down to rescue him. 15 Then these men came by agreement to the king and said to the king, "Know, O king, that it is a law of the Medes and Persians that no injunction or ordinance that the king establishes can be changed." 16 Then the king commanded, and Daniel was brought and cast into the den of lions. The king declared to Daniel, "May your God, whom you serve continually, deliver you!" 17 And a stone was brought and laid on the mouth of the den, and the king sealed it with his own signet and with the signet of his lords, that nothing might be changed concerning Daniel. 18 Then the king went to his palace and spent the night fasting; no diversions were brought to him, and sleep fled from him. 19 Then, at break of day, the king arose and went in haste to the den of lions. 20 As he came near to the den where Daniel was, he cried out in a tone of anguish. The king declared to Daniel, "O Daniel, servant of the living God, has your God, whom you serve continually, been able to deliver you from the lions?" 21 Then Daniel said to the king, "O king, live forever! 22 My God sent his angel and shut the lions' mouths, and they have not harmed me, because I was found blameless before him; and also before you, O king, I have done no harm." 23 Then the king was exceedingly glad, and commanded that Daniel be taken up out of the den. So Daniel was taken up out of the den, and no kind of harm was found on him, because he had trusted in his God. 24 And the king commanded, and those men who had maliciously accused Daniel were brought and cast into the den of lions—they, their children, and their wives. And before they reached the bottom of the den, the lions overpowered them and broke all their bones in pieces. 25 Then King Darius wrote to all the peoples, nations, and languages that dwell in all the earth: "Peace be multiplied to you. 26 I make a decree, that in all my royal dominion people are to tremble and fear before the God of Daniel, for he is the living God, enduring forever; his kingdom shall never be destroyed, and his dominion shall be to the end. 27 He delivers and rescues; he works signs and wonders in heaven and on earth, he who has saved Daniel from the power of the lions." 28 So this Daniel prospered during the reign of Darius and the reign of Cyrus the Persian.
Assignment for chapter 13

How Can I Effectively Disciple Others?

NOTE: Do not conclude your discipleship until you have completed and checked each of the following assignments:

___ Study and complete the material for chapter 13.
___ Discuss your answers to the questions in chapter 13 with the person who is discipling you.
___ Discuss with your discipler whether you are ready to begin discipling another person.
___ Discuss and pray with your discipler about the person you should select to disciple.
___ Memorize 2 Timothy 2:2, and tell it to the person who is discipling you.
___ Review all memory verses and the names of all the books of the Old Testament and New Testament.

☐ John 3:16-17. "For God so loved the world, that he gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life." For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but in order that the world might be saved through him.

☐ 1 John 5:12-13. "Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life." I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God that you may know that you have eternal life.

☐ Exodus 15:11. "Who is like you, O LORD, among the gods? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, awesome in glorious deeds, doing wonders"

☐ Psalm 119:9-11. "How can a young man keep his way pure? By guarding it according to your word." With my whole heart I seek you; let me not wander from your commandments!

☐ I have stored up your word in my heart, that I might not sin against you.

☐ 1 John 5:14. "And this is the confidence that we have toward him, that if we ask anything according to his will he hears us.

☐ Mathew 28:18-20. "And Jesus came and said to them, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age.""

☐ Colossians 3:12-14. "Put on then, as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved, compassionate hearts, kindness, humility, meekness, and patience, bearing with one another and, if one has a complaint against another, forgiving each other, as the Lord has forgiven you, so you also must forgive. And above all these put on love, which binds everything together in perfect harmony.

☐ Galatians 5:22-23. "But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness, self-control; against such things there is no law.

☐ Luke 10:19. "Behold, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall hurt you.

☐ 1 John 4:4. "Little children, you are from God and have overcome them, for he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world.

☐ Malachi 3:10. "Bring the full tithe into the storehouse, that there may be food in my house. And thereby put me to the test, says the Lord of hosts, if I will not open the windows of heaven for you and pour down for you a blessing until there is no more need.

☐ Ephesians 5:8-10. "for at one time you were darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light (for the fruit of light is found in all that is good and right and true), and try to discern what is pleasing to the Lord.

☐ Acts 1:8. "But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the end of the earth.

☐ 2 Timothy 2:2. "and what you have heard from me in the presence of many witnesses entrust to faithful men who will be able to teach others also.

124
Chapter 13

How Can I Effectively Disciple Others?

Memorize 2 Timothy 2:2

2 Timothy 2:2. "and what you have heard from me in the presence of many witnesses entrust to faithful men who will be able to teach others also.

The chapters in this discipleship manual have been designed to help us understand, trust, and obey God and His Word so as to grow as disciples of Jesus Christ. But in order to have an ongoing effect for the Kingdom of God, discipleship must also result in disciple-making. We who are students must now become the teachers. We have learned about being a disciple and have grown spiritually in our own lives, and now we must share these concepts with others.

As stated in the introduction of this manual, discipleship is not a new idea -- in fact, it is modeled after the ministry of Jesus Christ. Although Jesus preached to large crowds of people on some occasions, He spent the majority of His time teaching, training, and equipping 12 men. For a period of three years Jesus spent many, many hours with just these 12 men, discipling them to be His followers. This was Jesus’ strategy for reaching the world -- rather than spending most of His time teaching large crowds, He instead chose to focus on discipling 12 men who would take His message to the world. Today the name of Jesus is praised by over 1 billion Christians throughout the world because of the faithfulness of those 12 disciples who reproduced.

Focusing on discipling individuals who would multiply was Jesus’ method -- but is this really the best way? Wouldn’t we reach the world for Christ much more quickly if we taught large groups of people instead of teaching people one by one? Which method has more potential for success? To determine the answer to this question, let us look at the following example:

Suppose an evangelist establishes a successful ministry and leads ten people a night to faith in Jesus Christ. He does not establish nor build them up, he just leads them to Christ. Now let us suppose that he can do this for five nights a week for 50 weeks a year (because even an evangelist needs a two week vacation!). After one year, he will have led 2,500 people to the Lord. That is quite impressive!

Now, let us suppose another man, the disciple-maker, leads 2 people a year to the Lord. Let us also suppose that he establishes these 2 people and builds them up in the faith so that, each following year, these 2 people go and find 2 others and build them up, and they find 2 others and do likewise (this is the model found in verses such as 2 Timothy 2:2). After 20 years, who will have had the biggest impact for Jesus Christ in the world? The evangelist or the disciple-maker?
**The Evangelist**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>2,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>7,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4th</td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5th</td>
<td>12,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6th</td>
<td>15,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7th</td>
<td>17,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8th</td>
<td>20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9th</td>
<td>22,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10th</td>
<td>25,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11th</td>
<td>27,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12th</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13th</td>
<td>32,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14th</td>
<td>35,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15th</td>
<td>37,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16th</td>
<td>40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17th</td>
<td>42,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18th</td>
<td>45,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19th</td>
<td>47,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20th</td>
<td>50,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The Disciple-Maker**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>729</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6,561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19,683</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>59,049</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>177,147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>531,441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,594,323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4,782,969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14,348,907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>43,046,721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>129,140,163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>387,420,489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1,162,261,467</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3,486,784,401</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is why Jesus Christ calls His people to be disciple-makers!

If we focus on discipling individual people, and the people we disciple in turn disciple other individuals, then the end result will be the spread of the gospel to millions of people. It is a much more effective way of reaching the world than simply evangelizing large groups of people.

Jesus did not ignore large groups -- in fact we can see from the Bible that He often taught big crowds of people. But the main focus of His time and attention was on discipling individuals. If we are to follow the model of Jesus, we too will focus on discipling individuals.

Let us look more closely at the concept of discipleship as modeled by Jesus, and consider how we can best follow His model.

1. **Jesus Carefully Selected Only A Few People**

It all started with Jesus focusing on a few men to follow Him. This was His evangelistic strategy. During His first year of ministry, Jesus selected twelve men to be His disciples. His selection process actually took many months (John, Andrew, Peter, Philip and Nathaniel were chosen in John 1:35-51; then several months later, James and John were chosen in Matthew 4:21; Matthew is later called in Matthew 9:9). Jesus did not select His disciples in just one night by simply choosing 12 available men -- rather it took months of prayer before Jesus carefully selected the men He would disciple.

How can we follow the example of Jesus? It is important that we select the person we will disciple carefully and prayerfully. We should evaluate a potential candidate for discipleship by asking these questions about them:

- Is this person **faithful** - Will this person meet regularly with me? Will he/she complete the homework and take the process of discipleship seriously?
~ Is this person available - Does this person have time to commit to discipleship, or is his/her schedule too busy?
~ Is this person teachable - Is this person eager to learn and willing to change, or does he think he already knows everything?

An easy way to remember the above is to ask yourself, “Is this person ‘F.A.T.’ (i.e. faithful, available, and teachable)?”

Another important thing to remember when selecting a person to disciple is that men should disciple only men and women should disciple only women. This is a Biblical principle (Titus 2:3-4 and 2 Timothy 2:2) and will also avoid potential problems that might occur. It is also preferable that the person you disciple be younger than you (see Titus 2:1-7), although this is not necessary.

Titus 2:1-7. 1But as for you, teach what accords with sound doctrine. 2 Older men are to be sober-minded, dignified, self-controlled, sound in faith, in love, and in steadfastness. 3 Older women likewise are to be reverent in behavior, not slanderers or slaves to much wine. They are to teach what is good, 4 and so train the young women to love their husbands and children, 5 to be self-controlled, pure, working at home, kind, and submissive to their own husbands, that the word of God may not be reviled. 6 Likewise, urge the younger men to be self-controlled. 7 Show yourself in all respects to be a model of good works, and in your teaching show integrity, dignity,

Before you talk to a person about discipling them, you should spend time praying about your decision and ask the Lord to direct you to the best person to disciple.

2. Jesus Spent Many Hours With Those He Selected

Looking at the three year ministry of Jesus, we notice that He actually spent more time with His disciples than with anybody else. Look up the following verses and write some of the activities Jesus did with His disciples:

Matt 9:10 10 And as Jesus reclined at table in the house, behold, many tax collectors and sinners came and were reclining with Jesus and his disciples.

Mark 6:31-32. 31 And he said to them, “Come away by yourselves to a desolate place and rest a while.” For many were coming and going, and they had no leisure even to eat. 32 And they went away in the boat to a desolate place by themselves. John 11:54. 34 Jesus therefore no longer walked openly among the Jews, but went from there to the region near the wilderness, to a town called Ephraim, and there he stayed with the disciples.

John 1:38-39. 38 Jesus turned and saw them following and said to them, “What are you seeking?” And they said to him, “Rabbi” (which means Teacher), “where are you staying?” 39 He said to them, “Come and you will see.” So they came and saw where he was staying, and they stayed with him that day, for it was about the tenth hour.

Luke 9:18. 18 Now it happened that as he was praying alone, the disciples were with him. And he asked them, “Who do the crowds say that I am?” Matt. 26:36. 19 Then Jesus went with them to a place called Gethsemane, and he said to his disciples, “Sit here, while I go over there and pray.”

Luke 8:1. 8 Soon afterward he went on through cities and villages, proclaiming and bringing the good news of
the kingdom of God. And the twelve were with him, John 3:22. After this Jesus and his disciples went into the Judean countryside, and he remained there with them and was baptizing.

Jesus spent many, many hours with His disciples. He ate with them, slept with them, and talked with them. He brought them to His home. They walked together along the roads. They visited cities together. They sailed and fished together on the Sea of Galilee. They prayed together in the deserts and in the mountains. They worshipped together in the synagogues and in the temple.

How can we follow the example of Jesus? In addition to meeting with the person we are discipling in order to study the lessons, we must also spend time doing other activities with him or her. It is important to spend time just enjoying each other’s friendship, and building a genuine relationship with each other. Here are some suggestions of things that you and the person you are discipling can do together:

1) Eat a meal together/invite his/her family to your home
2) Share a time of prayer together
3) Do a sporting activity together
4) Share the gospel together
5) Attend a church event together
6) Go shopping together
7) Serve the person you are discipling by doing some work that is needed at his/her house

It is important to develop a close, personal friendship with the person you are discipling, so that you can demonstrate the love of God to them and can “spur one another on toward love and good deeds” (Heb. 10:24). Let us follow the example of Jesus in this way.

3. Jesus Modeled The Christian Life For His Disciples
Jesus didn’t just tell His disciple how to live a Christian life -- He modeled it for them. How did Jesus model the following things for His disciples?

Read Matthew 6:5-14. “And when you pray, you must not be like the hypocrites. For they love to stand and pray in the synagogues and at the street corners, that they may be seen by others. Truly, I say to you, they have received their reward. But when you pray, go into your room and shut the door and pray to your Father who is in secret. And your Father who sees in secret will reward you.” “And when you pray, do not heap up empty phrases as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard for their many words. Do not be like them, for your Father knows what you need before you ask him. Pray then like this: “Our Father in heaven, hallowed be your name. Your kingdom come, your will be done, on earth as it is in heaven.” Give us this day our daily bread, and forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil. For if you forgive others their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you, How did Jesus model prayer?

Read Matthew 19:13-15. “Then children were brought to him that he might lay his hands on them and pray. The disciples rebuked the people, but Jesus said, “Let the little children come to me and do not hinder them, for to such belongs the kingdom of heaven.” And he laid his hands on them and went away. How did Jesus model love for children?

Read John 4:7-42. A woman from Samaria came to draw water. Jesus said to her, “Give me a drink.” (For his disciples had gone away into the city to buy food.) The Samaritan woman said to him, “How is it that you, a Jew, ask for a drink
from me, a woman of Samaria?” (For Jews have no dealings with Samaritans.) 10 Jesus answered her, “If you knew the gift of God, and who it is that is saying to you, ‘Give me a drink,’ you would have asked him, and he would have given you living water.” 11 The woman said to him, “Sir, you have nothing to draw water with, and the well is deep. Where do you get that living water?” 12 Are you greater than our father Jacob? He gave us the well and drank from it himself, as did his sons and his livestock.” 13 Jesus said to her, “Everyone who drinks of this water will be thirsty again,14 but whoever drinks of the water that I will give him will never be thirsty again. The water that I will give him will become in him a spring of water welling up to eternal life.” 15 The woman said to him, “Sir, give me this water, so that I will not be thirsty or have to come here to draw water.” 16 Jesus said to her, “Go, call your husband, and come here.” 17 The woman answered him, “I have no husband.” Jesus said to her, “You are right in saying, ‘I have no husband’; 18 for you have had five husbands, and the one you now have is not your husband. What you have said is true.” 19 The woman said to him, “Sir, I perceive that you are a prophet. 20 Our fathers worshiped on this mountain, but you say that in Jerusalem is the place where people ought to worship.” 21 Jesus said to her, “Woman, believe me, the hour is coming when neither on this mountain nor in Jerusalem will you worship the Father. 22 You worship what you do not know; we worship what we know, for salvation is from the Jews. 23 But the hour is coming, and is now here, when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for the Father is seeking such people to worship him. 24 God is spirit, and those who worship him must worship in spirit and truth.” 25 The woman said to him, “I know that Messiah is coming (he is called Christ). When he comes, he will tell us all things.” 26 Jesus said to her, “I who speak to you am he.” 27 Just then his disciples came back. They marveled that he was talking with a woman, but no one said, “What do you seek?” or, “Why are you talking with her?” 28 So the woman left her water jar and went away into town and said to the people, 29 “Come, see a man who told me all that I ever did. Can this be the Christ?” 30 They went out of the town and were coming to him. 31 Meanwhile the disciples were urging him, saying, “Rabbi, eat.” 32 But he said to them, “I have food to eat that you do not know about.” 33 So the disciples said to one another, “Has anyone brought something to eat?” 34 Jesus said to them, “My food is to do the will of him who sent me and to accomplish his work. 35 Do you not say, ‘There are yet four months, then comes the harvest?’ Look, I tell you, lift up your eyes, and see that the fields are white for harvest. 36 Already the one who reaps is receiving wages and gathering fruit for eternal life, so that sower and reaper may rejoice together. 37 For here the saying holds true, ‘One sows and another reaps.’ 38 I sent you to reap that for which you did not labor. Others have labored, and you have entered into their labor.” 39 Many Samaritans from that town believed in him because of the woman’s testimony, “He told me all that I ever did.” 40 So when the Samaritans came to him, they asked him to stay with them, and he stayed there two days. 41 And many more believed because of his word. 42 They said to the woman, “It is no longer because of what you said that we believe, for we have heard for ourselves, and we know that this is indeed the Savior of the world.” How did Jesus model love and acceptance of those considered unacceptable?

Read Luke 5:27-32. 27 After this he went out and saw a tax collector named Levi, sitting at the tax booth. And he said to him, “Follow me.” 28 And leaving everything, he rose and followed him. 29 And Levi made him a great feast in his house, and there was a large company of tax collectors and others reclining at table with them. 30 And the Pharisees and their scribes grumbled at his disciples, saying, “Why do you eat and drink with tax collectors and sinners?” 31 And Jesus answered them, “Those who are well have no need of a physician, but those who are sick. 32 I have not come to call the righteous but sinners to repentance.” Now, read Luke 7:37-50. 37 And behold, a woman of the city, who was a sinner, when she learned that he was reclining at table in the Pharisee’s house, brought an alabaster flask of ointment, 38 and standing behind him at his feet, weeping, she began to wet his feet with her tears and wiped them with the hair of her head and kissed his feet and anointed them with the ointment. 39 Now when the Pharisee who had invited him saw this, he said to himself, “If this man were a prophet, he would have known who and what sort of woman this is who is touching him, for she is a sinner.” 40 And Jesus answering said to him, “Simon, I have something to say to you.” And he answered, “Say it, Teacher.” 41 “A certain moneylender had two debtors. One owed five hundred denarii, and the other fifty. 42 When they could not pay, he cancelled the debt of both. Now which of them will love him more?” 43 Simon answered, “The one, I suppose, for whom he cancelled the larger debt.” And he said to him, “You have judged rightly.” 44 Then turning toward the woman he said to Simon, “Do you see this woman? I entered your house; you gave me no water for my feet, but she has wet my feet with her tears and wiped them with her hair. 45 You gave me no kiss, but from the time I came in she has not ceased to kiss my feet. 46 You did not anoint my head with oil, but she has anointed my feet with ointment. 47 Therefore I tell you, her sins, which are many, are forgiven—for she loved much. But he who is forgiven little, loves little.” 48 And he said to her, “Your sins are forgiven.” 49 Then those who were at table with him began to say among themselves, “Who is this, who even forgives sins?” 50 And he said to the woman, “Your faith has saved you; go in peace.” How did Jesus model love for
Read John 13:3-15. Jesus, knowing that the Father had given all things into his hands, and that he had come from God and was going back to God, rose from supper. He laid aside his outer garments, and taking a towel, tied it around his waist. Then he poured water into a basin and began to wash the disciples' feet and to wipe them with the towel that was wrapped around him. He came to Simon Peter, who said to him, “Lord, do you wash my feet?” Jesus answered him, “What I am doing you do not understand now, but afterward you will understand.” Peter said to him, “You shall never wash my feet.” Jesus answered him, “If I do not wash you, you have no share with me.” Simon Peter said to him, “Lord, not my feet only but also my hands and my head!” Jesus said to him, “The one who has bathed does not need to wash, except for his feet, but is completely clean. And you are clean, but not every one of you.” For he knew who was to betray him; that was why he said, “Not all of you are clean.” When he had washed their feet and put on his outer garments and resumed his place, he said to them, “Do you understand what I have done to you? You call me Teacher and Lord, and you are right, for so I am. If I then, your Lord and Teacher, have washed your feet, you also ought to wash one another's feet. For I have given you an example, that you also should do just as I have done to you. **How did Jesus model humble servitude of others?**

Read Luke 22:41-42. And he withdrew from them about a stone's throw, and knelt down and prayed, saying, “Father, if you are willing, remove this cup from me. Nevertheless, not my will, but yours, be done.” **How did Jesus model how to accept suffering/submit to God's will?**

Read Luke 23:34. And Jesus said, “Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do.” And they cast lots to divide his garments. **How did Jesus model how to forgive your persecutors?**

Jesus truly modeled the Christian life for His disciples. In addition to the things listed above, He showed them the importance of studying and memorizing scripture (He quoted from the Old Testament 66 times), He showed them how to witness to others, how to trust God’s purposes, how to be willing to live a simple life, and many other things. His disciples did not only learn from the words He spoke, they also learned by watching Him live. Jesus showed them how to live a holy life.

Likewise, you are the exhibit for the person you are discipling. Philippians 3:17 tells us to “join with others in following my example... and take note of those who live according to the pattern we gave you,” and 2 Corinthians 3:2 reminds us that Christians are like a letter, “. . . known and read by everybody.” We should model the Christian life for the person we are discipling -- but we do not have to pretend to be perfect. We must be willing to be honest with our disciple and to admit our weaknesses and shortcomings, so that he/she can pray for and encourage us.

4. **Jesus Gave Assignments To His Disciples**

It is interesting to observe that for the first year of Jesus’ ministry, He did not give His disciples much to do other than to simply watch Him as He ministered and taught. Then during His second and third year of ministry, Jesus began to assign tasks for His disciples to do. In Mark 6:7 we read that Jesus sent His disciples out two by two to do the work of the ministry. He explained what He wanted them to do, and warned them that they would undoubtedly encounter some hardship. He gave them instructions and encouragement, and reminded them not to be afraid because God would be with them and would help them (Matthew 10, Luke 9).

Mark 6:7-13. And he called the twelve and began to send them out two by two, and gave them authority over the unclean
spirits. 8 He charged them to take nothing for their journey except a staff—no bread, no bag, no money in their belts—9 but to wear sandals and not put on two tunics. 10 And he said to them, “Whenever you enter a house, stay there until you depart from there. 11 And if any place will not receive you and they will not listen to you, when you leave, shake off the dust that is on your feet as a testimony against them.” 12 So they went out and proclaimed that people should repent. 13 And they cast out many demons and anointed with oil many who were sick and healed them.

Matthew 10: 1 And he called to him his twelve disciples and gave them authority over unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal every disease and every affliction. 2 The names of the twelve apostles are these: first, Simon, who is called Peter, and Andrew his brother; James the son of Zebedee, and John his brother; 3 Philip and Bartholomew; Thomas and Matthew the tax collector; James the son of Alphaeus, and Thaddaeus; 4 Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot, who betrayed him. 5 These twelve Jesus sent out, instructing them, “Go nowhere among the Gentiles and enter no town of the Samaritans, 6 but go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel. 7 And proclaim as you go, saying, ‘The kingdom of heaven is at hand.’ 8 Heal the sick, raise the dead, cleanse lepers, cast out demons. You received without paying; give without pay. 9 Acquire no gold or silver or copper for your belts, 10 no bag for your journey, or two tunics or sandals or a staff, for the laborer deserves his food. 11 And whatever town or village you enter, find out who is worthy in it and stay there until you depart. 12 As you enter the house, greet it. 13 And if the house is worthy, let your peace come upon it, but if it is not worthy, let your peace return to you. 14 And if anyone will not receive you or listen to your words, shake off the dust from your feet when you leave that house or town. 15 Truly, I say to you, it will be more bearable on the day of judgment for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah than for that town. 16 “Behold, I am sending you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be wise as serpents and innocent as doves. 17 Beware of men, for they will deliver you over to courts and flog you in their synagogues, 18 and you will be dragged before governors and kings for my sake, to bear witness before them and the Gentiles. 19 When they deliver you over, do not be anxious how you are to speak or what you are to say, for what you are to say will be given to you in that hour. 20 For it is not you who speak, but the Spirit of your Father speaking through you. 21 Brother will deliver brother over to death, and the father his child, and children will rise against parents and have them put to death, 22 and you will be hated by all for my name’s sake. But the one who endures to the end will be saved. 23 When they persecute you in one town, flee to the next, for truly, I say to you, you will not have gone through all the towns of Israel before the Son of Man comes. 24 “A disciple is not above his teacher, nor a servant above his master. 25 It is enough for the disciple to be like his teacher, and the servant like his master. If they have called the master of the house Beelzebul, how much more will they malign those of his household. 26 “So have no fear of them, for nothing is covered that will not be revealed, or hidden that will not be known. 27 What I tell you in the dark, say in the light, and what you hear whispered, proclaim on the housetops. 28 And do not fear those who kill the body but cannot kill the soul. Rather fear him who can destroy both soul and body in hell. 29 Are not two sparrows sold for a penny? And not one of them will fall to the ground apart from your Father. 30 But even the hairs of your head are all numbered. 31 Fear not, therefore; you are of more value than many sparrows. 32 So everyone who acknowledges me before men, I also will acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven, 33 but whoever denies me before men, I also will deny before my Father who is in heaven. 34 “Do not think that I have come to bring peace to the earth. I have not come to bring peace, but a sword. 35 For I have come to set a man against his father, and a daughter against her mother, and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law. 36 And a person’s enemies will be those of his own household. 37 Whoever loves father or mother more than me is not worthy of me, and whoever loves son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me. 38 And whoever does not take his cross and follow me is not worthy of me. 39 Whoever finds his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it. 40 “Whoever receives you receives me, and whoever receives me receives him who sent me. 41 The one who receives a prophet because he is a prophet will receive a prophet’s reward, and the one who receives a righteous person because he is a righteous person will receive a righteous person’s reward. 42 And whoever gives one of these little ones even a cup of cold water because he is a disciple, truly, I say to you, he will by no means lose his reward.”

Luke 9: 1-10. 9 And he called the twelve together and gave them power and authority over all demons and to cure diseases, 2 and he sent them out to proclaim the kingdom of God and to heal. 3 And he said to them, “Take nothing for your journey, no staff, nor bag, nor bread, nor money; and do not have two tunics. 4 And whatever house you enter, stay there, and from there depart. 5 And wherever they do not receive you, when you leave that town shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them.” 6 And they departed and went through the villages, preaching the gospel and healing everywhere. 7 Now Herod the tetrarch heard about all that was happening, and he was perplexed, because it was said by some that John had been raised from the dead, 8 by some that Elijah had appeared, and by others that one of the prophets of old had risen. 9 Herod said, “John I beheaded, but who is this about whom I hear such things?” 10 And he sought to see him. 11 On their return the apostles told him all that they had done. And he took them and withdrew apart to a town called Bethsaida.

A mother eagle teaches her babies to fly by pushing them out of the nest. In a similar way, Jesus pushed His
disciples out into the world to give them an opportunity to experience the work of ministry. Following this example, it is a valuable learning experience for the person you are discipling to be given assignments/tasks and then be supervised on those assignments. Here are some examples of tasks you can assign:

- Lead a prayer meeting.
- Teach a short Bible lesson.
- Serve an elderly person in the church.
- Share his or her testimony or present the gospel to someone.

Once the person you are discipling successfully completes an assignment, you can give them another assignment which has more responsibility.

5. **Jesus Supervised The Work Of His Disciples**

We also see in the Bible that after assigning tasks to the disciples, Jesus supervised their work by discussing with them later what they had accomplished (Mark 6:30, Luke 9:10). He praised them for what they had done (Luke 10:20-24), and also admonished them when He felt they were in need of correction (Mark 8:14-21).

Mark 6:30. **The apostles returned to Jesus and told him all that they had done and taught.**

Luke 9:10. **On their return the apostles told him all that they had done. And he took them and withdrew apart to a town called Bethsaida.**

Luke 10:20-24. **Nevertheless, do not rejoice in this, that the spirits are subject to you, but rejoice that your names are written in heaven.** 21 In that same hour he rejoiced in the Holy Spirit and said, “I thank you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, that you have hidden these things from the wise and understanding and revealed them to little children; yes, Father, for such was your gracious will. 22 All things have been handed over to me by my Father, and no one knows who the Son is except the Father, or who the Father is except the Son and anyone to whom the Son chooses to reveal him.” 23 Then turning to the disciples he said privately, “Blessed are the eyes that see what you see! 24 For I tell you that many prophets and kings desired to see what you see, and did not see it, and to hear what you hear, and did not hear it.”

Mark 8:14-21. **Now they had forgotten to bring bread, and they had only one loaf with them in the boat.** 15 And he cautioned them, saying, “Watch out; beware of the leaven of the Pharisees and the leaven of Herod.” 16 And they began discussing with one another the fact that they had no bread. 17 And Jesus, aware of this, said to them, “Why are you discussing the fact that you have no bread? Do you not yet perceive or understand? Are your hearts hardened? 18 Having eyes do you not see, and having ears do you not hear? And do you not remember? 19 When I broke the five loaves for the five thousand, how many baskets full of broken pieces did you take up?” They said to him, “Twelve.” 20 “And the seven for the four thousand, how many baskets full of broken pieces did you take up?” And they said to him, “Seven.” 21 And he said to them, “Do you not yet understand?”

In Mark 9:17-29, the disciples of Jesus failed in their efforts to cast out an evil spirit from a young boy. Jesus used their failure as an opportunity to teach them something about casting out evil spirits (Mark 9:28-29). In Luke 9:50-56, Jesus was traveling with His disciples and sent them ahead to arrange a place for Him to stay in a village, but the people of the village refused to allow Jesus to stay there. The disciples became angry and wanted to “call fire down from heaven to destroy them,” but Jesus “rebuked” His disciples and taught them the importance of being long-suffering and forgiving by simply continuing on this progress with them to another village.

Mark 9:17-29. **And someone from the crowd answered him, “Teacher, I brought my son to you, for he has a spirit that makes him mute.** 18 And whenever it seizes him, it throws him down, and he foams and grinds his teeth and becomes rigid. So I asked your disciples to cast it out, and they were not able.” 19 And he answered them, “O faithless generation, how long am I to be with you? How long am I to bear with you? Bring him to me.” 20 And they brought the boy to him. And when the spirit saw him, immediately it convulsed the boy, and he fell on the ground and rolled about, foaming at the mouth. 21 And Jesus asked his father, “How long has this been happening to him?” And he said, “From childhood. 22 And it has often cast him into fire and into water, to destroy him. But if you can do anything, have compassion on us and help us.” 23 And Jesus said to him, ““If you can! All things are possible for one who believes.” Immediately the father of the child cried out and said, “I believe; help my unbelief!” 25 And when Jesus saw that a crowd came running together, he rebuked the unclean spirit, saying to it, “You mute and deaf spirit, I command you, come out of him and never enter him again.” 26 And after crying out and convulsing him terribly, it came out, and the boy was like a corpse, so that most of them said, “He is dead.” 27 But Jesus took him by the hand and lifted him up, and he arose. 28 And when he had entered the
house, his disciples asked him privately, “Why could we not cast it out?” 29 And he said to them, “This kind cannot be driven out by anything but prayer.”

Luke 9:50-56. 50 But Jesus said to him, “Do not stop him, for the one who is not against you is for you.” 51 When the days drew near for him to be taken up, he set his face to go to Jerusalem. 52 And he sent messengers ahead of him, who went and entered a village of the Samaritans, to make preparations for him. 53 But the people did not receive him, because his face was set toward Jerusalem. 54 And when his disciples James and John saw it, they said, “Lord, do you want us to tell fire to come down from heaven and consume them?” 55 But he turned and rebuked them. 56 And they went on to another village.

Asking the person you are discipling to report to you his/her progress on assigned tasks and reviewing his/her work can be an important teaching/learning experience. When we take the time to review the work of the person we are discipling, we can encourage them as they develop new skills and are faithful in what they were asked to do, and we can also gently correct and assist them if they fail in their assignment.

6. Reproduction
Jesus expected His disciples to reproduce. One of the main purposes in training and equipping His disciples was so that they would be able to reproduce in other people what they had learned from Him, and in this way the world would hear the gospel.

We see examples in scripture of faithful Christians discipling others. In Acts 16 we read about Paul meeting Timothy and wanting to train and disciple him. Paul took Timothy along with him as he traveled about witnessing to unbelievers and encouraging Christians, and as Timothy watched Paul and ministered with him, he learned a great deal. As they spent time together, Paul and Timothy developed a very close relationship -- Paul later referred to Timothy as the “son I love” (1 Cor 4:17) and in a letter to Timothy Paul wrote, “My dear son . . . I remember you constantly in my prayers . . . I long to see you, so that I may be filled with joy (2 Timothy 1:1-4). Paul and Timothy’s relationship clearly was not simply teacher/student but a deep, personal friendship.

In his final recorded letter to Timothy, Paul urged him to continue the process of discipleship by reproducing in others what he had learned. Write out Paul’s instruction to Timothy from 2 Timothy 2:2:

Note the ongoing process of discipleship shown in 2 Timothy 2:2:

a. Paul discipled Timothy
b. Timothy was to disciple reliable men
c. The men Timothy discipled were to disciple others

Timothy was to be careful about whom he selected to disciple -- Paul instructed him to teach “reliable men who will also be qualified to teach others.” We need to encourage the person we are discipling to take the time to really pray about whom he/she will disciple, and to evaluate whether that person will be reliable and will eventually be able to disciple others. This is very important if the process of discipleship is to continue from person to person and generation to generation.

The Importance of Accountability
Being accountable to someone means being willing to tell someone else your actions, and to allow another person to know your progress or failures so they can help you grow. When a person is a member of a church but does not have any close, personal relationships with other Christians, it is difficult to really know if that person is growing as a Christian. It is not possible to know if that person is reading their Bible, praying daily, fleeing from temptation, witnessing to others, living a holy life, etc. A person can be a member of a church for years without really growing as a Christian.

Discipleship brings a person into an accountable relationship with another Christian. In the process of
discipleship, the person being discipled will be asked to speak honestly about his/her weaknesses and shortcomings so that the discipler can pray for and encourage him/her. The discipler will help the person they are discipling to set goals to change behavior and attitudes in order to become more Christ-like. It is within this type of caring relationship that real change can occur in the Christian. Being accountable also helps a person who lacks the courage and confidence to witness, teach, serve, and use their various spiritual gifts. The discipler can pray for and support the person being discipled as he/she gain the needed confidence to do the work of ministry to which God is calling them.

**Ongoing Discipleship**

We have seen that discipling individuals is a scriptural principle practiced by Jesus Himself. We have discussed the effectiveness of this strategy and seen how discipling individuals (rather than teaching large groups) eventually produces a great number of disciples, and allows the accountability which is needed to ensure that the disciples are genuine and obedient followers of Jesus. What must be remembered is that discipleship is not simply a 13-lesson class. Discipleship is a relationship between two people, and this relationship should be personal and genuine. Your relationship with the person you are discipling should not end after the 13 lessons are completed. You should continue to meet with him/her occasionally and pray together. You should offer encouragement and advice as he/she begins to disciple another person. You should continue to care about him/her and offer continued support as they grow in their Christian life.

**Are You Ready?**

Do you feel that you are able to multiply your life into someone else through the process of discipleship? Why or why not? __________________________

Remember that God will honor your steps of faith. If you feel inadequate, pray that God will give you the wisdom and ability to minister to others by discipling them. Review the guidelines below with the person who is discipling you, and take the time to discuss each one.

**Guidelines For The Discipler**

1) As explained earlier in this lesson, select a person to disciple after careful prayer and evaluation.

2) Before you begin to disciple another person, it is important to discuss with him or her why you are meeting and the commitment involved. Read the “Introduction to Discipleship” with him/her, and make certain the process of discipleship is understood. Also ask, “What are your needs and expectations regarding this discipleship process?”

3) Before your weekly meetings with the person you are discipling, always take the time to review each lesson and pray about what will be discussed. Keep in mind the spiritual maturity of the person you are discipling as you plan your discussion.

4) Be certain to do only ONE lesson at a time. Make sure the person you are discipling has a complete and proper understanding of each lesson before going on to the next lesson. This is very important, as the person you are discipling will eventually be teaching someone else. Make sure that they are not simply memorizing material, but that they are understanding and applying it. Seek to discover what is the most meaningful thing for the person you are discipling in each lesson, and help him or her to make at least one practical application.

5) Tell the person you are discipling that anything personal that is discussed will be kept completely confidential.

6) Share prayer requests with the person you are discipling, and pray daily for him or her.

7) Be sensitive to the needs of the person you are discipling. There will be times when you need to set

134
8) Review, review, review. This is the key to learning. (The apostle Peter used this principle in 2 Peter 1:11-15, "[11] For in this way there will be richly provided for you an entrance into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. [12] Therefore I intend always to remind you of these qualities, though you know them and are established in the truth that you have. [13] I think it right, as long as I am in this body, to stir you up by way of reminder, [14] since I know that the putting off of my body will be soon, as our Lord Jesus Christ made clear to me. [15] And I will make every effort so that after my departure you may be able at any time to recall these things.") Review material from previous chapters (including memory verses) and review progress on goals set previously.

9) Encourage the person you are discipling to complete the homework for each lesson (the homework will take about one hour each week to complete). Hold him/her accountable. Emphasize the importance of this discipline. Be sure to give much praise and encouragement to the person you are discipling when he or she faithfully completes the work and when you see growth in his/her life.

10) If the person you are discipling regularly fails to complete the homework or fails to keep three or four appointments with you (even after much encouragement from you), it may be best to suggest to that person that perhaps the discipleship should be postponed until he or she is ready and able to be seriously committed to the discipleship process. This will then make you available to disciple someone who is ready to be faithful in following through on commitments.

11) Evaluation of the person you are discipling is very important. After the fourth lesson, spend some time asking specific questions to discover if they are growing. Also ask them about any frustrations or disappointments they may be experiencing (many people are afraid to express disappointments or frustrations unless they are specifically asked). It will also be very helpful if you ask the person you are discipling to evaluate you after the two of you complete the manual so that you can become a more effective discipler.

Special Note: Do not be discouraged if a few of the people you are discipling quit. This is unavoidable. Trust God and take encouragement in those people who faithfully continued with discipleship and are now reproducing by discipling others.

Remember: Success Is A Successor!

Note to the discipler. Since this is the last and final lesson, please make sure the person you are discipling can answer “Yes” to all of the following questions:
1. Is he/she able to tell you 3 verses that teach that Jesus is God? Yes No
2. Does he/she have assurance of salvation? Yes No
3. Can he/she mention at least 5 attributes of God and two of His names? Yes No
4. Has he/she memorized all of the required verses for the lessons (see below)? Yes No
5. Does he/she daily spend time in prayer and Bible study? Yes No
6. Is he/she able to explain the gospel properly (using Romans Road or another method)? Yes No
7. Has the person you are discipling given his/her testimony to at least 2 unbelievers? Yes No
8. Has he/she presented the gospel to at least 2 unbelievers? Yes No
9. Is he/she a member of a local church and using his/her spiritual gifts to serve the church? Yes No
10. Does he/she know what his/her spiritual gift is? Yes No
11. Is he/she tithing to the local church? Yes No
12. Has he/she been baptized? Yes No
13. Has he/she selected someone to disciple? Yes No
Appendix: Eight Perspectives on Why There Is Pain, Suffering And Death

1) There is suffering, pain and death because of the effect of Adam’s sin. In Genesis 3, Adam disobeyed God, and we now live in a fallen world. The result is that spiritual and physical death came into the world, along with a wide variety of disease and sickness. God has given man free will, so He doesn’t interfere every time someone decides to sin.

2) Some things in life are a mystery. We do not have all of the information needed to answer some questions that arise in this life. But they will be answered when we personally meet the Lord. 1 Corinthians 13:12 says, “Now we see but a poor reflection as in a mirror; then we shall see face to face. Now I know in part; then I shall know fully, even as I am fully known.” God is sovereign and is in control of everything. He never says, “Uh-oh, I made a mistake!” There is a reason for everything that occurs even if for the moment we lack that information. Read Isaiah 55:8-9, “For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, declares the Lord. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways and my thoughts than your thoughts.”

3) The reason of humanitarianism. “I was naked and you clothed me, hungry and you fed me..” Matthew 25:34-46. Tragedies such as hurricanes, earthquakes, the homeless, etc. offer Christians the opportunity to fulfill Christ’s commands to minister to those who are hurting (Galatians 6:2, “Bear one another's burdens, and so fulfill the law of Christ.”) God uses suffering to open the door for the gospel to come in. For example, in America, many, many conversions have come through Christians witnessing and ministering to the victims of Hurricane Katrina. People are most open to the Gospel when suffering diminishes their self-sufficiency (2 Corinthians 1:9, “ Indeed, we felt that we had received the sentence of death. But that was to make us rely not on ourselves but on God who raises the dead.”)

Matthew 25:34-46 34 Then the King will say to those on his right, ‘Come, you who are blessed by my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world. 35 For I was hungry and you gave me food, I was thirsty and you gave me drink, I was a stranger and you welcomed me, 36 I was naked and you clothed me, I was sick and you visited me, I was in prison and you came to me.’ 37 Then the righteous will answer him, saying, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or naked or sick or in prison, and did not minister to you? 38 And when did we see you a stranger and welcome you, or naked and clothe you? 39 And when did we see you sick or in prison and visit you?’ 40 And the King will answer them, ‘Truly, I say to you, as you did it to one of the least of these my brothers, you did it to me.’ 41 Then he will say to those on his left, ‘Depart from me, you cursed, into the eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels. 42 For I was hungry and you gave me no food, I was thirsty and you gave me no drink, 43 I was a stranger and you did not welcome me, naked and you did not clothe me, sick and in prison and you did not visit me.’ 44 Then they also will answer, saying, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or naked or sick or in prison, and did not minister to you?’ 45 Then he will answer them, saying, ‘Truly, I say to you, as you did not do it to one of the least of these, you did not do it to me.’ 46 And these will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life.”

4) To bring about unity. Isaac had two sons, Jacob and Esau, that strongly disliked each other. But when the tragedy of Isaac’s death came, these two sons came together in unity (Genesis 35:29). Persecution offers the opportunity for people to come together shoulder to shoulder.

5) Tragedy offers God the opportunity to comfort the afflicted. He who suffers speaks many languages (i.e. understands people). (2 Corinthians 1:3-7). God comforts us in our sorrow so that we can later comfort others in theirs.

2 Corinthians 1:3-7. 3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies and God of all comfort, 4 who comforts us in all our affliction, so that we may be able to comfort those who are in any affliction, with the comfort with which we ourselves are comforted by God. 5 For as we share abundantly in Christ's sufferings, so through Christ we share abundantly in comfort too. 6 If we are afflicted, it is for your comfort and salvation; and if we are comforted, it is for your comfort, which you experience when you patiently endure the same sufferings that we suffer. 7 Our hope for you is unshaken, for we know that as you share in our sufferings, you will also share in our comfort.
6) **Suffering allows the Christian the privilege of being a testimony** and witness to the fact God gives “And the peace of God, which surpasses all understanding, will guard your hearts and your minds in Christ Jesus.” (Philippians 4:7) The spirit-filled Christian does not fall apart in times of trouble but stands strong.

1 Pet. 1:6-7 “In this you rejoice, though now for a little while, if necessary, you have been grieved by various trials, so that the tested genuineness of your faith—more precious than gold that perishes though it is tested by fire—may be found to result in praise and glory and honor at the revelation of Jesus Christ.”

Example: A real diamond and a fake diamond both glitter in the sunshine. However, submerge them both in the water and the real diamond retains its brilliance while the fake diamond loses its entire luster. Likewise, many may profess Christ, but the genuineness of their faith is shown when they are submerged in the waters of tribulation. If their faith is real, then it will continue to shine. If not, then they will show that their faith is artificial and not genuine. Sometimes suffering is a testing of our faith.

7) Suffering gives us the privilege of **the Fellowship of Christ’s sufferings**. (Philippians 3:10, “that I may know him and the power of his resurrection, and may share his sufferings, becoming like him in his death,”

8) Suffering tests our faith and refines us, shaping our character to be more and more like Christ.
Scripture Memory Verses

LESSON 1
*John 3:16-17*
"For God so loved the world that he gave His one and only Son, that whoever believes in Him shall not perish but have eternal life. 17 For God did not send His son into the world to condemn the world, but to save the world through Him.

LESSON 2
*1 John 5:12*
“He who has the Son has life; he who does not have the Son of God does not have life. 13 I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God so that you may know that you have eternal life.”

LESSON 3
*Exodus 15:11*
"Who among the gods is like you, O LORD? Who is like you-- majestic in holiness, awesome in glory, working wonders?"

LESSON 4
*Psalm 119:9*
How can a young man keep his way pure? By living according to your word. 10 I seek you with all my heart; do not let me stray from your commands. 11 I have hidden your word in my heart that I might not sin against you.

LESSON 5
*1 John 5:14*
“This is the confidence we have in approaching God: that if we ask anything according to his will, he hears us.”

LESSON 6
*Matthew 28:18-20*
Then Jesus came to them and said, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Therefore go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, and teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you. And surely I am with you always, to the very end of the age.”

LESSON 7
*Colossians 3:12-14*
Therefore, as God’s chosen people, holy and dearly loved, clothe yourselves with compassion, kindness, humility, gentleness and patience. Bear with each other and forgive whatever grievances you may have against one another. Forgive as the Lord forgave you. And over all these virtues put on love, which binds them all together in perfect unity.

LESSON 8
*Galatians 5:22-23*
“But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness and self-control. Against such things there is no law.”

LESSON 9
*Luke 10:19*
“I have given you authority to trample on snakes and scorpions and to overcome all the power of the enemy; nothing will harm you.”

LESSON 10
*Malachi 3:10*
“Bring the whole tithe into the storehouse, that there may be food in my house. Test me in this,” says the LORD Almighty, "and see if I will not throw open the floodgates of heaven and pour out so much blessing that you will not have room enough for it.”

LESSON 11
*Ephesians 5:8-10*
“For you were once darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Live as children of light (for the fruit of the light consists in all goodness, righteousness and truth) and find out what pleases the Lord.”

LESSON 12
*Acts 1:8*
“But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you; and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.”

LESSON 13
*2 Timothy 2:2*
“And the things you have heard me say in the presence of many witnesses entrust to reliable men who will also be qualified to teach others.”
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Prayer Request</th>
<th>Praise Report</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>